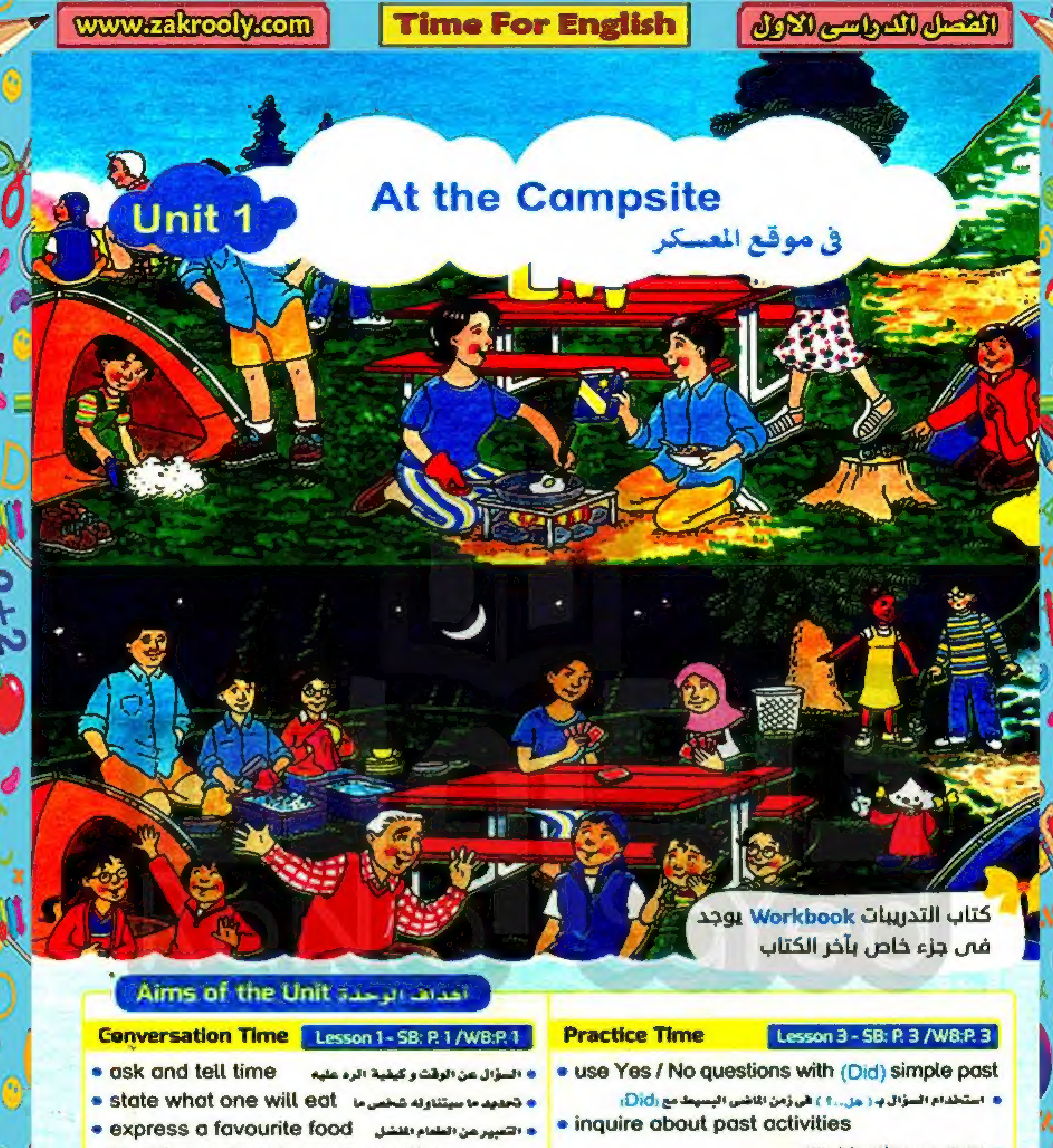


Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time — Lesson 1 - SB: P. 1 /WB:P. 1

- ask and tell time — السؤال عن الوقت و كيفية الرد عليه
- state what one will eat — تحديد ما سيتناوله شخص ما
- express a favourite food — التعبير عن الطعام المفضل
- identify speakers in a conversation — التعرف على المتحدثين في محادثة

Word Time — Lesson 2 - SB: P. 2 /WB:P. 2

- use words of camping activities — استخدام الكلمات الخاصة بالأنشطة داخل المعسكر

Practice Time — Lesson 3 - SB: P. 3 /WB:P. 3

- use Yes / No questions with (Did) simple past — استخدام السؤال بـ (هل...؟) فى زمن الماضى البسيط مع (Did)
- inquire about past activities — الاستفسار عن الأنشطة فى الماضى

Phonics Time — Lesson 4 - SB: P. 4 /WB:P. 4

- distinguish between consonant blends: ch, sh voiced th , voiceless th , br, pr, gr, tr, dr, cr, sl, pl, fl, sp, sn, sm — التميز بين أصوات الحروف الساكنة
- associate sound of letters with written form — ربط أصوات الحروف بصيغة كتابتها



Conversation Time وقت المحادثة



SB Page: 1
WB Page: 1



Vocabulary المفردات

Foods and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات

beans	فول	fish	سمك
eggs	بيض	fruit	فاكهة
cheese	جبنة	rice	أرز
bread	خبز	cereal	طعام من الحبوب

Meals وجبات

breakfast	الإفطار	dinner	العشاء
lunch	الغداء		

Adjectives صفات

happy	سعيد	wrong	خطأ
sad	حزين	hungry	جائع / جوعان

Places أماكن

campsite = camp	موقع المعسكر / المعسكر	school	مدرسة

Other words كلمات أخرى

What time?	ما وقت؟	favourite	مفضل
next to	بجانب	sunscreen	كريم الوقاية من أشعة الشمس
camera	كاميرا	homework	واجب مدرسي
o'clock	الساعة بالضبط	night	الليل

Unit 1

Phrases and Expressions عبارات وتعبيرات

It's time for......	حان الوقت لـ......	My favourite!	إنه المفضل لدى!
Yum!	لذيذ! (تعبير للطعام الشهى)	Smells good.	رائحته جيدة (شهى).

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
watch يشاهد	watched	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
look يبدو / ينظر	looked	smell يكون له رائحة	smelled / smelt
		find يجد	found
		have/has لديه/يتناول	had

Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم



- Wake up, Mona. — استيقظى يا منى.
- What time is it? = What is the time? — ما الوقت؟
- It's seven o'clock. — إنها الساعة السابعة.
- It's time for breakfast. — حان وقت تناول وجبة الإفطار.
- Good. I'm hungry. — حسنًا. إننى جوعانه.
- What's for breakfast? — ما هو طعام الإفطار؟
- We're having beans and eggs. — سنتناول فول وبيض.
- Yum! My favourite! — لذيذ! إنه الطعام المفضل لى!
- What's wrong? — ما المشكلة؟
- I can't find my sunscreen. — لا استطيع أن أجد كريم الوقاية من الشمس الخاص بى.
- It's next to your camera. — إنه بجوار الكاميرا الخاصة بك.
- Oh! There it is. — ياه! هاهو.



A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

B Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين:

C Role-play the conversation with a partner. تبادل المحادثة مع زميلك:

Tapescript نص الاستماع



1 **Hoda :** Wake up, Mona!



2 **Mona :** What time is it, Hoda?

Hoda : It's seven o'clock. It's time for breakfast.

Mona : Good. I'm hungry.



3 **Mona :** Smells good. What's for breakfast?

Hoda : We're having beans and eggs.

4 **Mona :** Yum! My favourite!



Unit 1

D Review. Listen and repeat. راجع. استمع وردد:



: What's wrong?

: I can't find my sunscreen.

: It's next to your camera.

: Oh! There it is.

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية



1 have + مشروب / طعام = eat / drink يتناول

- I **have** cheese and beans for breakfast.
- We **are having** rice and fish for lunch.
- She **is having** juice.

• لاحظ : يُحدد معنى الفعل have حسب الشيء الذي يأتي بعده.

2 Wake up + شخص ... استيقظ يا

- Wake up, Mona. استيقظي يا منى.

3 شخص + wake + شخص + up ...... شخص يوقظ شخص آخر

- Hoda **wakes** Mona **up**. قامت هدى بإيقاظ منى.

4 It's time for + اسم (حان الوقت لـ)

- **It's time for** breakfast. حان وقت تناول وجبة الإفطار.
- **It's time for** work. حان وقت العمل.

5 can يستطيع / can't لا يستطيع + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I can't **find** my pencil. لا أستطيع أن أجد قلمي الرصاص.





Language Functions وظائف لغوية

١- السؤال والإخبار عن الوقت :

- What time is it? = What's the time? — للسؤال عن الوقت :
  It's + رقم + o'clock — للاجابة:
- It's seven o'clock.

٢- تحديد ما سيتناوله شخص ما :

- What's for breakfast? — ماذا عن طعام الإفطار ؟
- We're having beans and eggs. — سوف نتناول فول وبيض .

٣-التعبير عن الطعام المفضل:

- Yum! My favourite. — إنه طعامي المفضل .

٤- للسؤال عند وجود مشكلة ما :

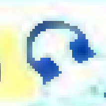
- What's wrong? — ما المشكلة؟

Exercises on Lesson 1





1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:



نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — بنى سويف - إدارة ناصر 2014

Hoda : Wake up, Mona!
Mona : What ❶ .... is it, Hoda?
Hoda : It's seven o'clock. It's time for breakfast.
Mona : ❷ .... I'm hungry. What's for breakfast?
Hoda : We're having ❸ .... and eggs.
Mona : Smells ❹ ....



Unit 1

2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة.

					Answer
1	park	camera	school	campsite	....
2	wake	smell	find	juice	....
3	happy	hungry	good	time	....
4	lunch	your	our	my	....
5	eggs	beans	wrong	cheese	....

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

املأ الفراغات مستخدما هذه الكلمات.

night - breakfast - beans - o'clock - hungry

Yesterday, Mona and Hoda went to a camp. They woke up at seven (1) .... They were (2) .... They had (3) .... at eight o'clock. They had (4) .... and eggs.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- A: What .... is it? B: It's ten o'clock.

a. colour b. time c. game d. kind

2- The food .... good.

a. wakes b. finds c. smells d. reads

3- She wants to drink orange .... سوهاج - إدارة طما 2015

a. juice b. box c. meat d. bread

4- Sameh wants to eat. He is ....

a. happy b. thirsty c. sad d. hungry

5- Wake .... It's time for breakfast. القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2015

a. up b. to c. on d. for

6- The book is next .... the pen.

a. to b. with c. for d. in

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة :

كفر الشيخ - إدارة بيلا 2015

Every morning, I get up at six o'clock. It's time for breakfast. My mother cooks breakfast. I eat with my family. We have beans and eggs. My favourite food for breakfast is eggs.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	My father cooks breakfast.		
2	I eat with my family.		
3	We have beans and eggs.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- When do you get up?

....

5- What's your favourite food for breakfast?

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة :

1- you - Are - and rice - chicken - having? المنيا - إدارة مغاغة 2015

....

2- find - my - I - sunscreen - can't.

....

3- breakfast - time - It's - for. سوهاج - إدارة طما 2015

....

4- eating - What - he - is?

....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الآتية :

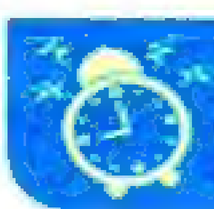
1- what time is it fatma

....

2- good i am hungry

....

Unit 1



Word Time

وقت الكلمات



SB Page: 2
WB Page: 2

Verbs and Nouns — أفعال تأتي مع أسماء



cook breakfast يطهو وجبة الإفطار



listen to stories يستمع إلى قصص



laugh at jokes يضحك على النكات



climb a mountain يتسلق جبل



watch the sunrise يشاهد شروق الشمس



play cards يلعب الكوتشينة



wash the pots and pans يغسل الأواني والطاسات



clean the tent تنظف الخيمة

Other words — كلمات أخرى

bedroom	حجرة نوم	glasses	نظارة
litter	القمامة	bin	سلة المهملات

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
cook	يطهو - يطبخ	cooked	play	يلعب	played
listen to	يستمع إلى	listened to	wash	يغسل	washed
laugh at	يضحك على	laughed at	clean	ينظف	cleaned
climb	يتسلق	climbed	drop	يلقى - يرمى	dropped
watch	يشاهد	watched	use	يستخدم	used
bake	يخبز	baked	call	ينادى / يتصل	called

Grammar — قواعد لغوية


١- للسؤال عن مالك (صاحب) شيء ما نستخدم:

Whose + اسم الشيء المفرد + is + this / that?

Whose + اسم الشيء الجمع + are + those / these?

A: Whose glasses are those? — ملك من هذه النظارة ؟

للاجابة نقول:

B: I think they're hers / mine / his. — أعتقد أنها ملكها / ملكي / ملكه .

٢- للنهي عن أمر نستخدم: **Don't + inf. مصدر الفعل**

- Don't drop litter. — لا تلق القمامة.

ولإعطاء أمر نبدأ بمصدر الفعل:

- Use the bin. — استخدم سلة المهملات.

Unit

Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage: الاستخدام

- يعبر المضارع المستمر عن فعل يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

Form: التكوين

I → am
He / She / It → is
We/ You / They → are
} + verb+ ing

- I'm watching the sunrise.
- He is reading a book.
- They are cleaning the tent.

Negative: النفي

- لنفي الفعل في زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not بعد am / is / are

- He isn't washing the pots.
- You aren't climbing a mountain.

Question: السؤال

- للسؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نستخدم:

Am / Is / Are (1) + فاعل (2) + verb (3) + ing? (4)

- Is he playing cards?
  Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.
- Are they watching TV?
  Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

- تأتي الكلمات الآتية في زمن المضارع المستمر:

now الآن / at the moment في هذه اللحظة / Look! انظر / Listen! استمع

لاحظ الاختصارات:

- am = 'm
- is = 's
- are = 're
- is not = isn't
- are not = aren't



A. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

B. Point and say the words. أشر وقل الكلمات:

WORD TIME

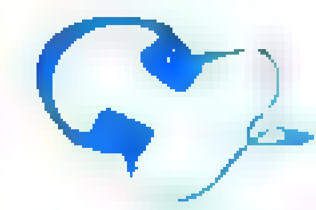
استمع الى نص الاستماع وردد الكلمات.

1. cook breakfast
2. listen to stories
3. laugh at jokes
4. climb a mountain
5. watch the sunrise
6. play cards
7. wash the pots and pans
8. clean the tent

C Listen and point. استمع وأشر :

• استمع وأشر إلى الكلمات الآتية فى الصورة السابقة.

- Watch the sunrise.
- Clean the tent.
- Play cards.
- Climb a mountain.
- Laugh at jokes.
- Cook breakfast.
- Listen to stories.
- Wash the pots and pans.

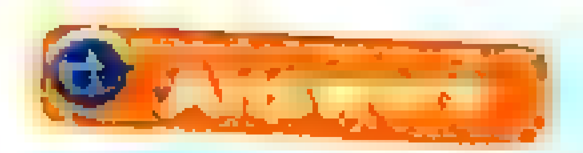


• استمع إلى الحوارات الآتية وأشر إلى المتحدثين فى الصورة السابقة.

1 A : Do you want eggs?
B : No, thanks. I have cereal.
A : Okay.

2 A : Whose glasses are those?
B : I think they're hers.
A : Yes, they are.

3 A : Hey ! Don't do that.
B : What?
A : Don't drop litter. Use the bin.
B : Oh, I see it. Thanks.



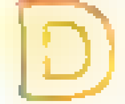
1- (woman and boy by daytime campfire)
امرأة وولد بجوار نار المعسكر فى النهار

2- (girls at right of daytime scene) بنات على يمين مشهد النهار

3- (children by bin) أطفال بجوار سلة المهملات

D Write the words:

اكتب الكلمات فى القاموس الخاص فى نهاية الكتاب المدرسى صفحات (٣٢ - ٣٣).



Exercises on Lesson 2





1 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة:

					Answer
1	pots	spoons	clean	plates	....
2	rice	What	Whose	Where	....
3	cheese	fish	beans	sunscreen	....
4	listen	pan	cook	clean	....
5	This	That	bin	Those	....

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

املأ الفراغات مستخدما هذه الكلمات:

الأقصر - إدارة إسنا 2015

sunrise - pots - cleaned - cards - sister

Yesterday, we were at a campsite. My mother washed the ❶ .... and pans. My sister ❷ .... the tent. My brother climbed the mountain and watched the ❸ .... I played ❹ .... with my father and listened to my grandmother's stories.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- She .... at my jokes. القليوبية - كفر شكر 2015

a. listened b. looked c. washed d. laughed

2- I climbed a .... last summer.

a. bike b. tent c. story d. mountain

3- .... glasses are those? They're mine.

الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين 2015

a. How b. What c. Whose d. Who

4- Hisham is .... the sunrise.

a. watch b. watching c. watches d. watched

5- Children like listening .... stories.

a. in b. on c. at d. to

6- They are .... lunch.

a. laughing b. cooking c. cleaning d. washing

4 Read the passage and answer the questions. اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة.

Last year, my family went to a camp. They got up at seven o'clock. First, they had breakfast and listened to stories. Then, they laughed at jokes and climbed a mountain. Next, they played cards and washed the pots and pans. Finally, أخيراً they cleaned the tent.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	The family listened to music.		
2	They played football.		
3	They cleaned the tent.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Who went to the camp?

....

5- What did the family wash?

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1- a - climb - mountain - Did - he?

....

2- are - Whose - those - glasses?

....

3- Mona - stories - listens - to. أسيوط - إدارة أسيوط 2015

....

4- beautiful - sunrise - The - is.

....

6 Look and write a question and its answer: انظر واكتب السؤال والإجابة:

الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2015



بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد 2015



1. ....?
....

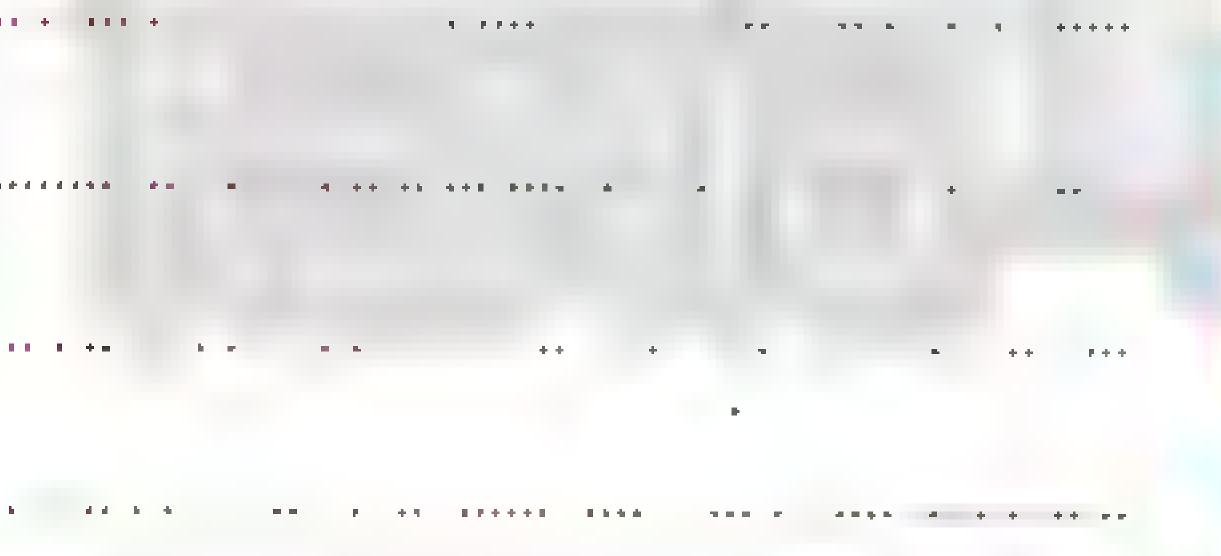
2. ....?
....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences

انظر واكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل:

• Use the following guiding words:

listen - jokes - cards - wash



....
....
....
....



8 Punctuate the following ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الاتية:

1- heba and laila aren t playing cards

....

2- what s your favourite food, mohamed

....

Unit 1





Practice Time وقت التمرين

SB Page: 3
WB Page: 3

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage: الاستخدام

– يعبر زمن الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

Form: التكوين

– يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط بإضافة ed للفعل المنتظم.

cook ⟶ cooked | listen ⟶ listened

– أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ e نضيف d فقط.

bake ⟶ baked | smile ⟶ smiled

– الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ y مسبوقة بحرف متحرك (a – e – o – i – u) نضيف ed للفعل.

play ⟶ played | stay ⟶ stayed

– الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ y مسبوقة بحرف ساكن نحذف y ونضيف ied.

cry ⟶ cried | study ⟶ studied

– بعض الأفعال يضاعف بها الحرف الأخير عند إضافة ed.

drop ⟶ dropped | stop ⟶ stopped

– الأفعال غير المنتظمة نستخدم التصريف الثاني للفعل ويحفظ كما هو.

cut ⟶ cut | see ⟶ saw

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

- yesterday أمس - last ...... (week - month) (الأسبوع - الشهر) الماضي
- in the past في الماضي - ago منذ - once ذات مرة - in 2016

Negative: النفي

– في حالة النفي نستخدم:

❶ فاعل + ❷ didn't (= did not) + ❸ inf. مصدر الفعل ....

- She didn't play cards yesterday.
- I didn't clean the tent last week.

Question: السؤال

Yes / No questions

للسؤال بـ "هل . . . ؟" فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم :

Did + الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

- Did you cook breakfast? — هل كنت تطهى طعام الإفطار ؟
- Did she (Huda) clean the tent? — هل نظفت هدى الخيمة؟
- وللإجابة بالإثبات نستخدم الصيغة المختصرة: Yes, + الفاعل + did.
- وللإجابة بالنفى نستخدم الصيغة المختصرة: No, + الفاعل + didn't.
- Did you play cards?
- No, I didn't. I watched the sunrise. — وللإجابة الكاملة فى النفى نستخدم :

لاحظ أن you فى السؤال تحول إلى I أو we فى الإجابة .

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

Did you cook breakfast?

Yes, I did.
No, I didn't. I played cards.

didn't = did not

cook	→ cooked	listen	→ listened	laugh	→ laughed
climb	→ climbed	watch	→ watched	play	→ played
wash	→ washed	clean	→ cleaned		

Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner:

استمع و ردد. ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

- يتبادل التلاميذ السؤال والإجابة بـ "هل . . ؟" باستخدام Did بعد النظر إلى الصورة.

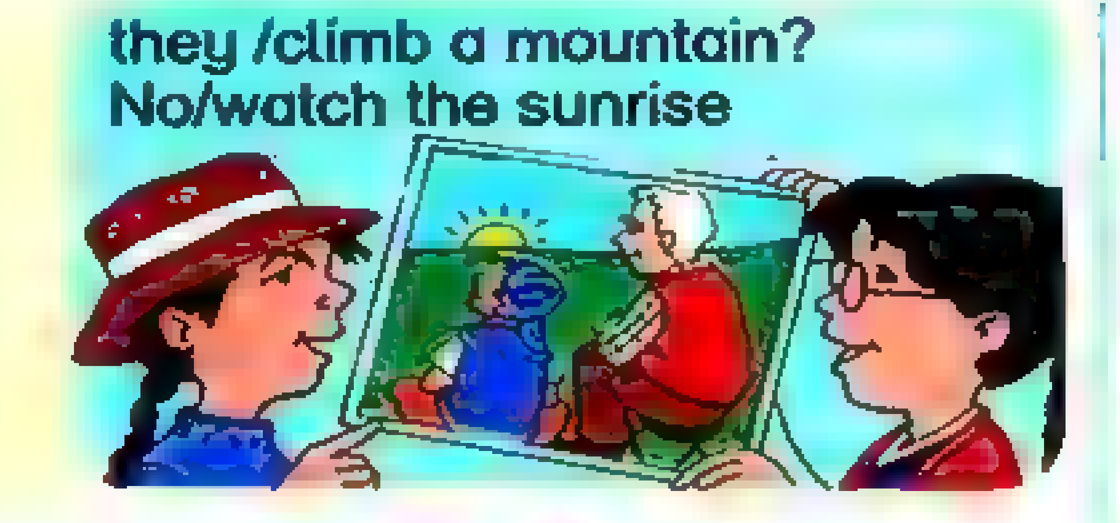
1 Did he wash the pots and pans?
- Yes, he did.

he/wash the pots and pans? Yes



2 Did they climb a mountain?

- No, they didn't. They watched the sunrise.



3 Did she clean the tent?

- Yes, she did .



4 Did you listen to stories?

- No, I didn't .I climbed a mountain.



5 Did they play cards?

- No, they didn't. They listened to stories.



6 Did you laugh at jokes?

- Yes, I did.



C Look at page 2. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

انظر إلى صفحة 2 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميلك.

S1 : (pointing to Mona's mother) :
Did she cook breakfast?
S2 : Yes,she did.

يشير أحد التلاميذ إلى والدة منى ويقول:
هل قامت بطهى الإفطار؟
ويجيب الآخر: نعم، قامت بذلك.

D Listen and sing along. استمعوا وغنوا معًا:

- يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية (Did Kareem Watch the Sunrise?) ويرددونها: (SB Page 29)

The SONG

Did Kareem Watch the Sunrise?

Did Kareem watch the sunrise?
No, he didn't . No, he didn't.
Did Kareem watch the sunrise?
No, he didn't . He played cards.
Did Ali climb a mountain?
No, he didn't . No, he didn't.
Did Ali climb a mountain?
No, he didn't . He played cards.
Did Ramy clean the tent?
Yes, he did . Yes, he did.
Did Ramy clean the tent?
Yes, he did . He cleaned the tent.



Exercises on Lesson 3





1 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة:

					Answer
1	watched	listened	laughed	clean	....
2	she	you	hers	they	....
3	wash	use	story	cook	....
4	Ramy	Ali	Kareem	Mona	....
5	played	wash	climb	clean	....

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: املأ الفراغات مستخدما هذه الكلمات:

بنى سويف - إدارة سمسطا 2015

visit - breakfast - listened - home - climbed

Last summer, Mona and Hoda went to a camp. They woke up at six o'clock. They had ❶ .... at seven o'clock. They had beans and eggs. Mona ❷ .... to music. Hoda ❸ .... a mountain. They watched the sunrise. They went ❹ .... at eight o'clock. They were happy.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- Did you laugh at jokes? No, we ....

a. are b. didn't c. don't d. did

2- Did they .... the tent?

a. clean b. cleaned c. cleaning d. cleans

3- She didn't .... cards yesterday.

a. play b. plays c. played d. playing

4- .... your sister cook lunch?

a. Are b. Do c. Did d. Have



4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1- clean - She - the - didn't - tent.

....

2- did - go - Where - he - yesterday? كفر الشيخ - إدارة فوة 2015

....

3- laugh - she - Did - jokes - at?

....

4- he - No, - watch - the sunrise - didn't.

....

5 Look and write a question and its answer:

انظر واكتب السؤال والإجابة:



1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:

انظر واكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل:

- **Use the following guiding words:**

grandfather - tell - stories - night



....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الآتية:

1- no they didn t

....

2- did ayman and yasser laugh at jokes

....



Unit

Phonics Time

SB Page: 4
WB Page: 4

. نتعلم فى هذا الدرس التميز بين أصوات الحروف الساكنة عند دمجها معاً.

sh	sheep	خروف
	shirt	قميص
	dish	طبق
	fish	سمكة

ch	cheese	جبن
	chair	كرسى
	catch	يمسك
	watch	يشاهد
	peach	خوخة

(th)

th	three	ثلاثة
pr	present	هدية

(th) voiced

th	mother	أم
br	bread	خبز
	bring	يحضر

At the Campsite



Unit 1

A. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :




chair


fish


mother


three


bread


present


green

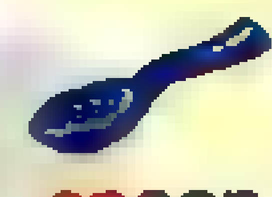

tree


drum


cry


slide

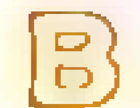

plane


flower


spoon


sneeze

smile



B. Listen and write. استمع إلى الكلمات الآتية واكتب :

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار



1- .... ing 2- .... ell 3- .... ay

4- .... eep 5- .... ain 6- .... ree

C. Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

اقرأ الجُمل واكتب الرقم على الصورة المناسبة ثم استمع:

(الإجابة آخر الوحدة)

1- Mother has a fish. She puts the fish on a dish.
2- Mother sees a tree. She sees three.
3- Mother is on a plane. The plane is over Spain.
4- Mother eats some cheese. Mother has to sneeze.









Exercises on Lesson 



1 Listen and circle استمع وضع دائرة:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1 grass / green	2 smile / sneeze	3 tree / three

2 Listen and complete استمع وأكمل:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار   كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق 2014

Samira : Hello, Nawal. Where are you going?

Nawal : I'm going to the ❶ ....

Samira : What are you going to ❷ .... there?

Nawal : I am going to ❸ .... kites and play on the slide.

Samira : Can I come ❹ .... you?

Nawal : Yes, you can.

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة:

					Answer
1	father	eggs	mother	sister	....
2	clean	cook	climb	cards	....
3	catch	watch	bring	spoon	....
4	cup	dish	peach	glass	....
5	sneeze	smile	cheese	cry	

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box املأ الفراغات مستخدما هذه الكلمات:

trees - slide - catch - smile - peaches

There is a park near our house. We like to fly kites and play on the ❶ .... .We ❷ .... spiders. There are a lot of flowers and ❸ .... .We eat plums and ❹ .... in the park.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1- My father gave me a .... on my birthday.

a. tree b. green c. present d. dish

2- She eats some ....

a. cheese b. trees c. sneeze d. chairs

3- I ate beans and ....

a. shirt b. dish c. bread d. chair

4- She is nice. She always ....

a. smiles b. sneezes c. sees d. cries

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة :

1- did - What - do - they? بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد 2015

....

2- this - We - park - like.

....

3- fish - in - They - creek - watched - the.

....

4- she - a dish - Did - put - the fish - on?

....

5- plane - over - The - Spain - is.

....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الآتية :

1- did magdy play on the slide on friday

....

2- ahmed and fatma went to spain

....

Remember

Vocabulary المفردات



Camping activities أنشطة المعسكر

cook breakfast	يطهو وجبة الإفطار	listen to stories	يستمع إلى قصص
laugh at jokes	يضحك على النكات	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل
watch the sunrise	يشاهد شروق الشمس	play cards	يلعب كوتشينة
wash the pots and pans	يغسل الأوانى والطاسات	clean the tent	ينظف الخيمة

Foods and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات

beans	فول	plums	برقوق
bread	خبز	peaches	خوخ
cheese	جبنة	cereal	طعام من الحبوب
eggs	بيض	rice	أرز
fish	سمك		

[illegible]

breakfast	الإفطار	dinner	العشاء
lunch	الغداء		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Present مضارع	Past ماضى
cook يطهو - يطبخ	cooked	play يلعب	played
listen to يستمع إلى	listened to	wash يغسل	washed
laugh at يضحك على	laughed at	clean ينظف	cleaned
climb يتسلق	climbed	drop يلقى - يرمى	dropped
watch يشاهد	watched	use يستخدم	used

Unit 1

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	find يجد	found
smell يشم	smelled / smelt	have / has لديه / يتناول	had



Grammar قواعد لغوية

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.
- تتكون الأفعال في الماضي من التصريف الثاني للفعل.
- التصريف الثاني إما أن يكون الفعل منتظم فضيف للفعل (d/ed/ied) أو فعل غير منتظم يحفظ كما هو.

like ⟶ liked play ⟶ played

carry ⟶ carried cut ⟶ cut

- She washed the pots and pans yesterday.
- They played cards last week.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

- yesterday أمس - last ...... (week - month) الماضي (الشهر – الأسبوع)
- in the past في الماضي - ago منذ - in 2016

Negative: النفى

- في حالة النفي نستخدم.

❶ فاعل + ❷ didn't (= did not) + ❸ inf. مصدر الفعل ..... .

- He didn't drop the litter.
- They didn't clean the tent.

Question: السؤال

❶ Did + ❷ فاعل + ❸ inf. مصدر الفعل ..... ?

- Did you cook breakfast? – هل كنت تطهى طعام الإفطار ؟

– الإجابة المختصرة:

Yes, + الفاعل + did. (اثبات)

Yes, + الفاعل + didn't. (نفى)

Remember

تسميع الكلمات

إنجليزي ⟸ عربي

cheese	....	shirt	....
drum	....	watch the sunrise	....
clean the tent	....	cook breakfast	....
wake up	....	spider	....
dish	....	sunscreen	....
creek	....	smell	....
bring	....	sheep	....
grass	....	cry	....
beach	....	play cards	....

عربي ⟸ إنجليزي

يلقى / يرمى	....	أم	....
خبز	....	جائع	....
يستمع إلى قصص	....	سلة المهملات	....
الغداء	....	ملعقة	....
خوخ	....	وردة	....
طائرة	....	يتسلق جبل	....
يبتسم	....	هدية	....
يعطس	....	مفضل	....
عصير	....	العشاء	....

Writing skills مهارات الكتابة — Unit 1

السؤال السابع فى ورقة الامتحان:

7 Look and write a question and its answer: انظر واكتب السؤال الاجابة:



1.



- What are they doing?
  They are cleaning the tent.

2.



- Did he wash the pots and pans?
  Yes, he did.

3.



- What's the girl doing?
  She's climbing a mountain.

4.



- Did they cook breakfast?
  No, they didn't.

السؤال الثامن فى ورقة الامتحان:

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: انظر واكتب فقرة انشائية من أربعة جمل:

- **Use the following guiding words:**

campsite - wake - breakfast - seven



Mona and Hoda are at the campsite. Hoda is waking Mona up. It's seven o'clock. It's time for breakfast.

camp - listen - jokes - wash



We go to the camp every week. We listen to stories. We laugh at jokes. We wash the pots and pans.



Test  

Unit One

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	plums planes	2	spoon spider	3	bread present

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل (6 marks)

Magdy : Did you go to the campsite?
Emad : Yes, I went there last week.
Magdy : ❶ .... did you do there?
Emad : I played ❷ .... and cleaned the tent.
Magdy : Did you ❸ .... the mountain?
Emad : No, I didn't. I watched the ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة

المنوفية - إدارة الباجور 2016

					Answer
1	father	friend	sister	brother	....
2	park	school	campsite	green	....
3	Where	How	were	When	....
4	beans	cheese	pots	eggs	....
5	wash	cook	climb	cards	



Unit

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1- .... 's for breakfast, Sameh?

a. What b. Where c. Whose d. Who

2- My camera is .... to the sunscreen.

a. behind b. next c. under d. on

3- Did you .... the pans?

a. washing b. washed c. washes d. wash

4- Cheese is my .... food.

a. sad b. favourite c. hungry d. tall

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

أقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة :

البحيرة - إدارة التحرير 2015

My name is Mona. I'm in primary five. I get up at seven o'clock. I have breakfast at home. I have eggs and beans. I go to school by bike. I like my school very much .

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Mona is in primary six.		
2	She doesn't have breakfast at home.		
3	She goes to school by bike.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What does Mona have in the morning?

....

5- When does Mona get up?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences (4 marks)

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملا صحيحة :

كفر الشيخ - إدارة بيلا 2015

1- did - you - Where - go?

....

2- Did - mountain - he - a - climb?

....

3- didn't - I - cards - play. الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين 2015

....

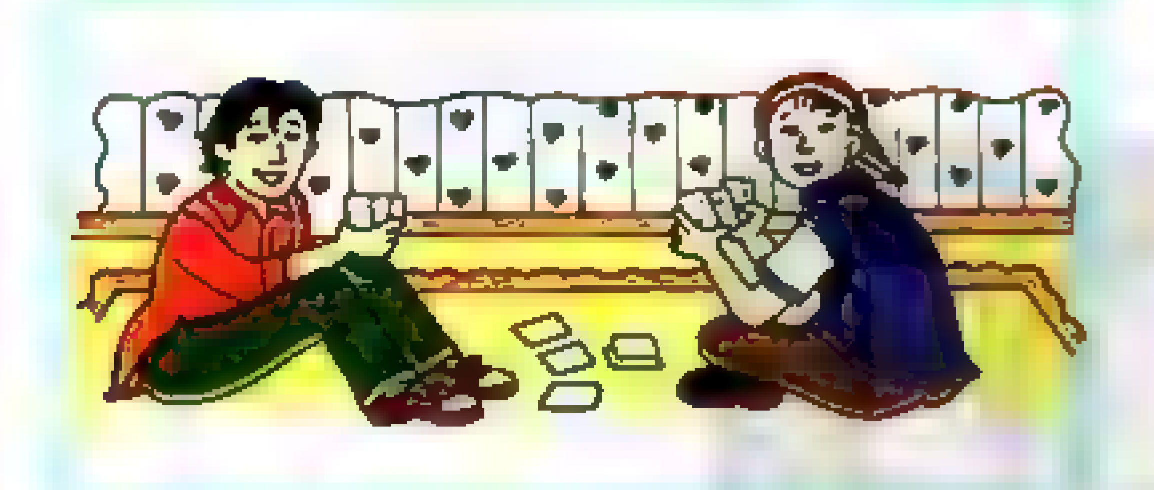
4- breakfast - is - cooking - She.

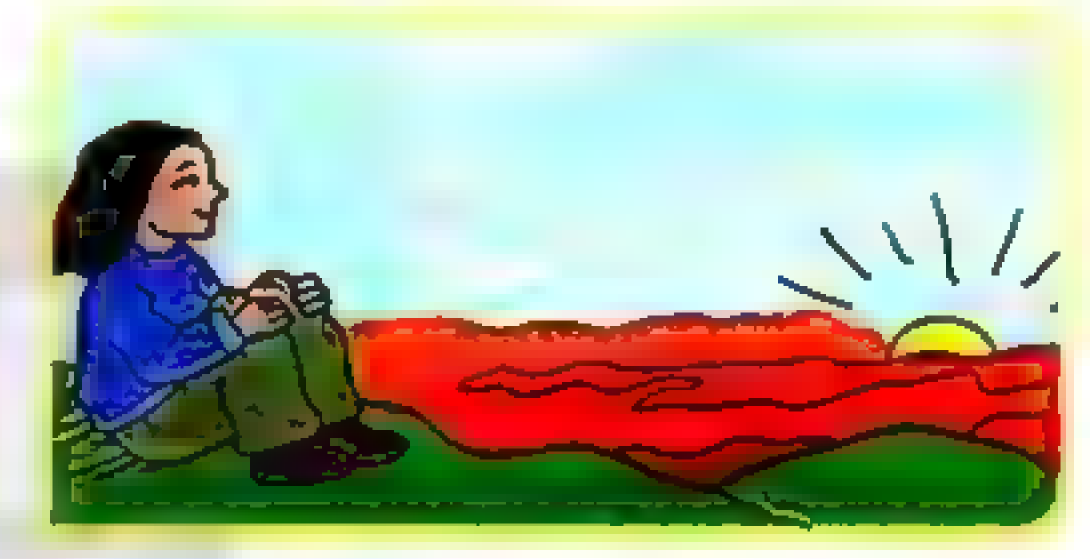
....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

انظر واكتب السؤال والاجابة:

شمال سيناء - إدارة العريش 2015





1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

انظر واكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل:

- **Use the following guiding words:**

breakfast - laugh at jokes - clean the tent - stories



....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الآتية: (2 marks)

1- where s hoda

....

2- i saw mohammed and ali yesterday

....

Listening materials

Unit 1



Exercises - Lesson 1

1- Listen and complete:

Hoda : Wake up, Mona!
Mona : What **time** is it, Hoda?
Hoda : It's seven o'clock. It's time for breakfast.
Mona : **Good**. I'm hungry. What's for breakfast?
Hoda : We're having **beans** and eggs.
Mona : Smells **good**.

Phonics Time

B- Listen and write:

1- bring 2- smell 3- play
4- sheep 5 - train 6- three

C- Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen:

2, 4, 1, 3

Exercises - Lesson 4

1- Listen and circle:

1- grass 2 - sneeze 3- three

2- Listen and complete:

Samira : Hello, Nawal. Where are you going?
Nawal : I'm going to the **park**.
Samira : What are you going to **do** there?
Nawal : I am going to **fly** kites and play on the slide.
Samira : Can I come **with** you?
Nawal : Yes, you can.

Test 1 - Unit 1

1- Listen and circle:

1- plums 2- spoon 3- bread

2- Listen and complete:

Magdy : Did you go to the campsite?
Emad : Yes, I went there last week.
Magdy : **What** did you do there?
Emad : I played **cards** and cleaned the tent.
Magdy : Did you **climb** the mountain?
Emad : No, I didn't. I watched the **sunrise**.



Unit 2

At the Amusement Park

فى حديقة الملاهى

كتاب التدريبات Workbook يوجد فى جزء خاص بآخر الكتاب

Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time — Lesson 1 – SB: P. 5 / WB: P. 5

- express physical states
- التعبير عن الحالات البدنية
- make suggestions
- تقديم اقتراحات
- express preferences
- التعبير عن التفضيل
- ask about & state a problem
- السؤال و الإبلاغ عن مشكلة
- offer help
- تقديم المساعدة
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة

Word Time — Lesson 2 – SB: P. 6 / WB: P. 6

- use words of leisure activities
- استخدام الكلمات الخاصة بأنشطة وقت الفراغ
- Write & read Sentences
- قراءة وكتابة جُمل

Practice Time — Lesson 3 – SB: P. 7 / WB: P. 7

- use simple past with irregular verbs (affirmative and negative statements)
- استخدام الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة (فى جمل الاثبات والنفى)

Phonics Time — Lesson 4 – SB: P. 8 / WB: P. 8

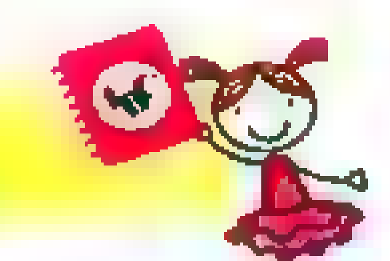
- identify sound of final (ed)
- التعرف على صوت نهاية الفعل (ed)
- associate sound of letters with written form
- ربط صوت الحروف بصيغة كتابتها

Unit



Conversation Time
وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 5
WB Page: 5



Vocabulary المفردات

Adjectives صفات

hot	حار	hungry	جوعان
thirsty	عطشان	enough	كافي

Foods and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات

pineapple	أناناس	juice	عصير
spaghetti	مكرونة اسباجتي	popcorn	فيشار

Places أماكن

snack bar	مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة	amusement park	حديقة الملاهي

Other words كلمات أخرى

really	جدًا	too	أيضاً
my treat	على حسابي	clerk	عامل في محل / موظف
money	نقود	kind	نوع
What kind?	ما نوع؟	favourite	مفضل

Expressions التعبيرات

Uh-oh!	أوه (تعبير عن الإنزعاج)	Help yourself.	تفضل (خذ ما تشاء).
Here you are.	تفضل.	Thanks a lot.	شكراً جزيلاً.
That's okay.	حسنًا / لا عليك.		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
want يريد	wanted	get يحصل على	got
help يساعد	helped	have / has يمتلك / عنده	had



Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم

- It's so hot. — الجو حار جدًا.
- I'm really thirsty. — أنا عطشان جدًا.
- Me,too. — وأنا أيضا.
- Let's get some juice. — هيا نحضر بعض من العصير.
- What kind of juice do you want? — ما نوع العصير الذى تريده؟
- Pineapple juice, please. — عصير أناناس، من فضلك.
- I don't have enough money. — أنا لا أمتلك مالًا كافيًا.
- It's my treat. — إنه على حسابى. / على نفقتى.
- Smells good. What's for lunch? — رائحته جيدة. ما هو طعام الغداء؟
- Yum! My favourite. — لذيذ. إنه المفضل بالنسبة لي.
- Here. Help yourself. — ها هو. تفضل (خذ ما تريد).

Unit

A. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

B. Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين:

C. Role-play the conversation with two other students.
تبادل الأدوار مع اثنين آخرين من زملائك:



Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع وردد وأشر إلى المتحدثين، ثم تبادل الأدوار في المحادثة مع اثنين من زملائك.





1 **Girl** : It's so hot. I'm really thirsty.
Boy : Me, too. Let's get some juice.



2 **Clerk** : What kind of juice do you want?
Boy : Pineapple juice, please.

3 **Boy** : Uh-oh! I don't have enough money.
Girl : That's okay. It's my treat.



4 **Girl** : Here you are.
Boy : Thanks a lot.

D Review. Listen and repeat. راجع. استمع وردد:



: Smells good. What's for lunch?
: We're having spaghetti.
: Yum! My favourite!
: Here. Help yourself.

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية



1 so + صفة جداً

- تأتي " so " قبل الصفة بمعنى (جداً) .

- I'm so thirsty. أنا عطشان جداً.
- He is so happy. إنه سعيد جداً .

2 enough + اسم كافي

- تأتي " enough " قبل الإسم بمعنى (كافي).

- They have enough money. إنهم يمتلكون مالاً كافيا.
- He doesn't have enough water. إنه لا يمتلك ماءً كافيا.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



١- تقديم اقتراح :

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل .... (للاقتراح)

- Let's have tea. هيا نتناول الشاى.
- Let's get some juice. هيا نحضر بعض من العصير.

٢- التعبير عن التفضيل :

What kind of + اسم ❶ + فعل مساعد ❷ + فاعل ❸ ❹ ......? (ما نوع ...... ؟)

- What kind of juice do you want? Orange juice.
- What kind of films did you see? Arabic films.

٣- التعبير عن الحالات البدنية :

- I'm really thirsty. — أنا عطشان جدًا.

٤- الإبلاغ عن مشكلة والرد عليها :

- Uh-oh! I don't have enough money. — أوه. أنا لا أمتلك مالاً كافيًا.
- That's okay. — حسنًا / لا عليك.

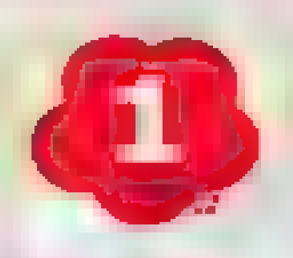
٥- تقديم المساعدة :

- Here you are. — تفضل.
- Thanks a lot. — شكرًا جزيلًا.

٦- لموافقة شخص فى رأى:

- I'm hungry. — أنا جوعان.
- Me, too. — وأنا أيضا.

Exercises on Lesson 1





1 Listen and complete

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2015

Mona : It's so hot. Let's get some juice.
Rana : What ❶ .... of juice do you want?
Mona : ❷ .... juice, please.
Rana : ❸ .... you want some popcorn?
Mona : Yes, I do.
Rana : Oh! I don't have enough money.
Mona : That's okay. It's my ❹ ....

2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one

					Answer
1	teacher	park	clerk	baker	....
2	popcorn	spaghetti	enough	rice	....
3	milk	bread	water	tea	....
4	get	want	do	money	....
5	hot	thirsty	see	enough	

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

get - pineapple - friends - popcorn - hot

Yesterday, I went to the amusement park. I went with my ❶ .... It was ❷ ... . I was thirsty. I went to ❸ .... some juice. I drank ❹ .... juice. I was so happy.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Let's .... some bread.
   a. get   b. getting   c. got   d. gets

2- Sorry, I don't have .... money to buy candy.
   a. enough   b. some   c. no   d. so

3- What .... of juice do you want?
   a. treat   b. time   c. kind   d. drink

4- Here's the spaghetti. Help ....
   a. your   b. yours   c. yourself   d. you

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My friend Hossam goes out with his family every Friday. They go to the amusement park. They play and have sandwiches. When they are thirsty, they drink juice. Hossam likes pineapple juice and his brother Ahmed likes orange juice. Last week, Hossam had lunch with his brother. It was his treat.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Hossam went out with his friends.		
2	Last week, Hossam bought juice.		
3	Hossam drank pineapple juice.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What kind of juice does Hossam's brother like?

....

5- Where does Hossam go every Friday?

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- go - Did - amusement - you - to - park - the?

....

2- enough - have - money - Do - you? الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة 2014

....

3- thirsty - really - I'm.

....

4- some - Let's - popcorn - get.

....

7 Look and write a question and it's answer

....? ....?

....

8 [illegible] and write a paragraph of [illegible] (4) sentences

- **Use the following guiding words:**

hot - thirsty - drink - orange

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following.

1- did you go with mona and huda الشرقية - إدارة مشتول 2015

....

2- let s get some juice please

....

Word Time وقت الكلمات

SB Page: 6
WB Page: 6

Leisure activities أنشطة وقت الفراغ



drink juice يشرب عصير



eat cotton candy يأكل حلوى غزل البنات



win a prize يفوز بجائزة





go on a ride يذهب لركوب لعبة فى الملاهى



see a show يشاهد عرض



have lunch يتناول وجبة الغداء



buy tickets يشترى تذاكر





take pictures يلتقط صور

Unit 2

Nouns أسماء

cookies	كعك صغير مُحلى	ticket	تذكرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
drink	يشرب	drank	eat	يأكل	ate
win	يفوز	won	have/has	يتناول / يمتلك	had
see	يرى	saw	take	يأخذ	took
buy	يشترى	bought	write	يكتب	wrote
sweep	يكنس	swept			

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



لعرض المساعدة:

May I help you?

Yes, please. للرد بالموافقة.

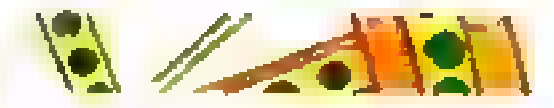
No, thanks. للرد بالنفي.

A. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

B. Point and say the words. أشر وقل الكلمات:

WORD TIME

استمع الى نص الاستماع وردد الكلمات.



1. drink juice
2. eat cotton candy
3. win a prize
4. go on a ride
5. see a show
6. have lunch
7. buy tickets
8. take pictures

Unit

C. Listen and point. استمع وأشر :

• استمع وأشر إلى الكلمات الآتية فى الصورة السابقة.

- Take pictures.
- Go on a ride.
- Win a prize.
- Buy tickets.
- Have lunch.
- Drink juice.
- Eat cotton candy.
- See a show.

• استمع إلى الحوارات الآتية وأشر إلى المتحدثين فى الصورة السابقة.



1 A : Did you wash the pots and pans?
B : No, I didn't. I baked cookies.

2 A : What time is it?
B : It's twelve o'clock.
A : I'm hungry.
B : Me, too.

3 A : May I help you?
B : Two tickets, please.
A : That's three pounds.
B : Here you are.
A : Thank you.

Answers

1- (Workers at pizza place) عمال فى مكان بيع بيتزا
2- (Man and woman seeing a show) رجل وامرأة يشاهدان عرض
3- (People at ticket booth) أشخاص بجوار كشك بيع التذاكر

D. Write the words. اكتب الكلمات :

اكتب الكلمات فى القاموس الخاص فى نهاية الكتاب المدرسى صفحات (٣٢ - ٣٤).



Exercises on Lesson





1 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Osman : Where did you go yesterday?

Farah : I went to the amusement park.

Osman : Did you ❶ .... pictures?

Farah : Yes, I did. I ate ❷ .... candy, too.

Osman : Did you win a ❸ .... ?

Farah : No, I didn't. I went on a ❹ ....

2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	girl	ticket	woman	boy	....
2	chicken	salad	rice	show	....
3	bought	took	had	ride	....
4	one	nine	flower	four	....
5	drink	win	went	see	....

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

a - tickets - lunch - show - drank

Yesterday, my friend and I visited the amusement park. We bought ❶ .... We went on a ride. We ❷ .... orange juice. We had ❸ .... there. We saw a ❹ .... in the evening. We went home at night.

4 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- The girl is .... pictures with the camera.

a. having b. taking c. sweeping d. writing

2- We go to the amusement .... to do many activities.

a. garden b. park c. school d. camp

3- Hany .... a prize last week.

a. drank b. saw c. won d. ate

4- That's okay. It's my .... أسيوط - إدارة ديروط 2015

a. time b. kind c. feed d. treat

5- We're buying .... for the show.

a. kites b. books c. cars d. tickets

6- Let's go on a ....

a. ride b. prize c. flower d. kite

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.

1- yesterday - the - I - show - saw.

....

2- help - May - you - I?

....

3- candy - Did - you - eat - cotton?

....

4- on - They - going - a ride - are.

....

5- time - it - What - is?

....

6 Look and write a question and its answer:





1. ....?
....

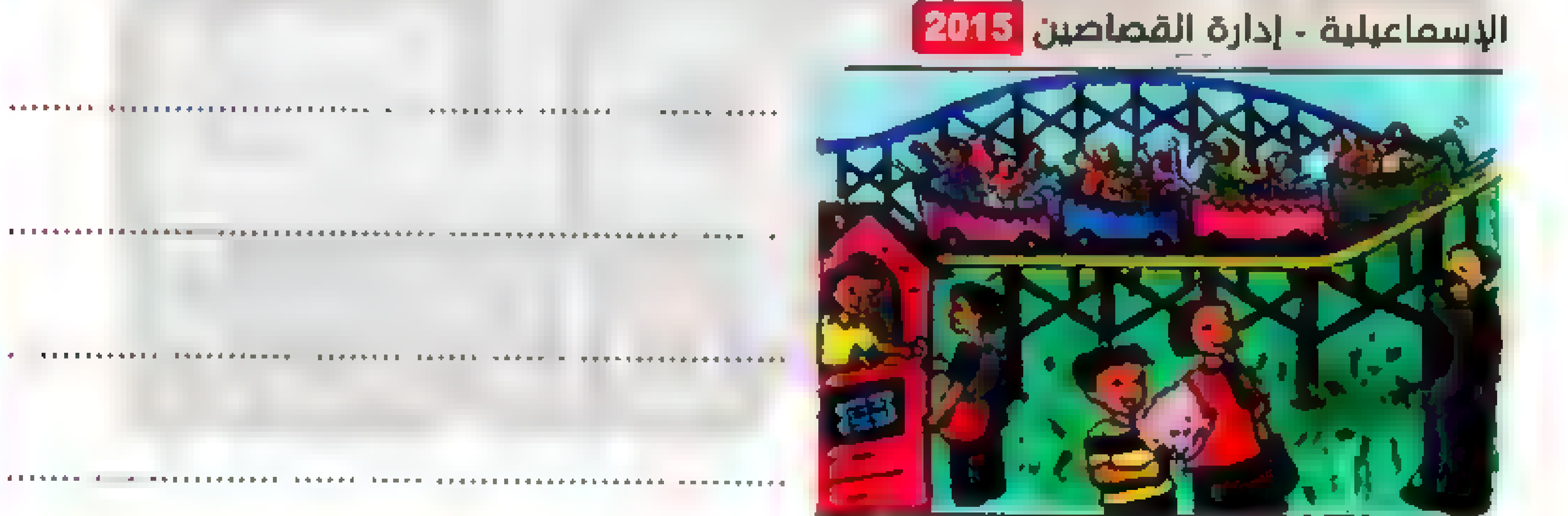
2. ....?
....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:

- **Use the following guiding words:**

drink juice - eat cotton candy - buy tickets - take pictures

الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين 2015



....
....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- where are kareem s friends having lunch

....

2- let s see the show on friday

....



Practice Time وقت التدريب

SB Page: 7
WB Page: 7



Grammar قواعد لغوية

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

- كما شرحنا فى الوحدة السابقة:
- يعبر زمن الماضى البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.
- يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من التصريف الثانى للأفعال المنتظمة التى تتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) للفعل.

cook → cooked　　dance → danced　　cry → cried

- She cooked lunch.　　- He played football.

- ويتكون من التصريف الثانى للأفعال غير المنتظمة:

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض	Present مضارع		Past ماض
drink	يشرب	drank	eat	يأكل	ate
win	يفوز	won	go	يذهب	went
see	يرى	saw	have	يملك	had
buy	يشترى	bought	take	يأخذ	took

- They bought tickets.　　- He won a prize.

Negative: النفى

- لنفى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

❶ الفاعل + ❷ did not (= didn't) + ❸ inf. مصدر الفعل

- He washed his hands. → - He didn't wash his hands.
- They won a prize. → - They didn't win a prize.

A. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

- يستمع التلاميذ إلى نص الاستماع ثم يرددون.

- She bought tickets.
- She didn't eat cotton candy.

drink → drank eat → ate win → won go → went
see → saw have → had buy → bought take → took

B. Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك:

• يكون التلاميذ جُملا عن الصور بالإثبات والنفي في زمن الماضي البسيط:

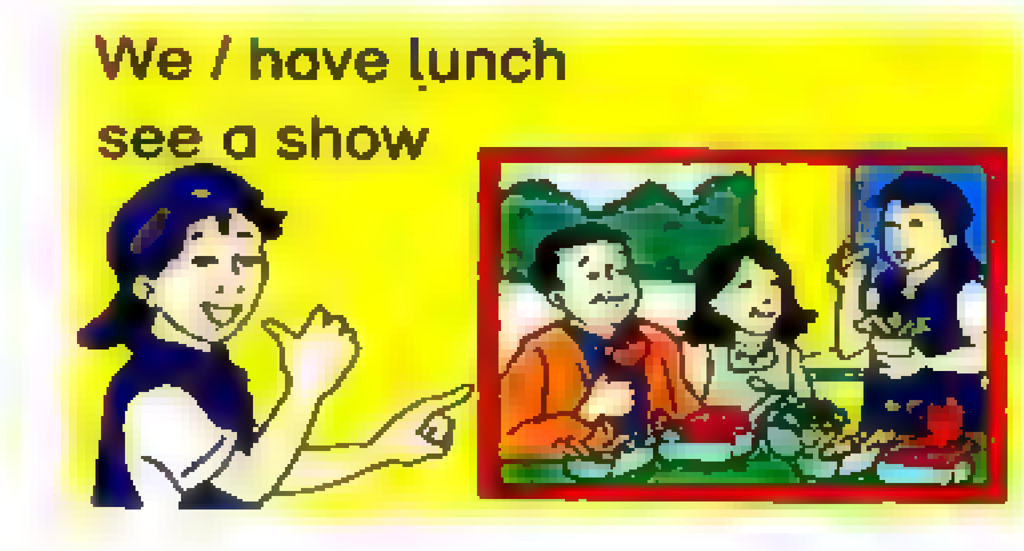
1 They saw a show.
- They didn't have lunch.



2 She took pictures.
- She didn't win a prize.



3 We had lunch.
- We didn't see a show.



Unit

4 You won a prize.

- You didn't take pictures.



5 He went on a ride.

- He didn't drink juice.



6 I drank juice.

- I didn't go on a ride.



C **Look at page 6. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.**

انظر إلى صفحة 6 بالكتاب المدرسي. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميلك.

S1 : (pointing to Kareem) — يشير التلميذ الأول إلى كريم ويقول :

He drank juice. — هو شرب العصير.

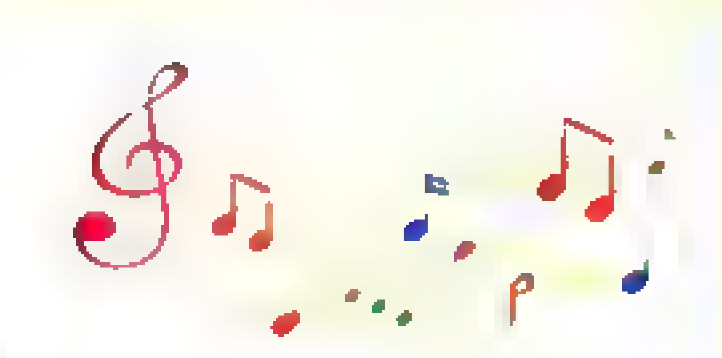
S2 : I didn't drink juice. — ويرد التلميذ الثاني ويقول : لم أشرب عصير.

D Listen and sing along. استمعوا وغنوا معًا:

- يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية (Ayman and Amira Saw a Show) ويرددونها: (SB Page 29)

The SONG

Ayman and Amira Saw a Show



Ayman and Amira saw a show,
saw a show, saw a show.
Ayman and Amira saw a show.
They didn't win a prize.



Basem and Mona won a prize,
won a prize, won a prize.
Basem and Mona won a prize.
They didn't buy tickets.

Ali and Iva bought tickets,
bought tickets, bought tickets.
Ali and Iva bought tickets.
They didn't see a show.





Exercises on Lesson 3





1 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	father	brother	mother	juice	....
2	Yasser	Magdy	take	Adel	....
3	picture	ticket	prize	eat	....
4	climb	wanted	helped	cooked	....
5	we	she	they	on	....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Dalia didn't.............. the show. — الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2015

a. seeing b. saw c. see d. sees

2- Did your sister.................. lunch?

a. cooked b. cooks c. cook d. cooking

3- Hisham is happy. He.................. a prize yesterday.

a. win b. won c. wins d. winning

4- Did you go on a ride? - No, I ....

a. wasn't b. am not c. don't d. didn't

5- We................. take pictures.

a. didn't b. aren't c. weren't d. doesn't

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

went - juice - took - ate - ticket

It was really cool at the amusement park. My brother ❶............ pictures at the park. I had lunch there, but I didn't drink ❷ .... My friend ❸ .... on a ride. He ❹ .... cotton candy, too.



4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- did - What - they - see? الأقصر - إدارة إسنا 2015

....

2- took - Mustafa - pictures - Mr.

....

3- Where - were - yesterday - you? الفيوم - إدارة شرق 2015

....

4- didn't - She - cotton - eat - candy.

....

5 Look and write a question and its answer:





1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

6 Punctuate the following:

1- she didn t see the show in cairo

....

2- did hassan and faten have lunch

....

Phonics Time وقت الصوتيات

SB Page: 8
WB Page: 8



Verbs and Nouns أفعال وأسماء تأتى معا

brush the cat	ينظف القطة بالفرشاة	play chess	يلعب شطرنج
call her mother	تتصل بوالدتها	bake a pie	يخبز فطيرة / كعكة
chop the logs	يقطع جذوع الشجر	kiss the frog	يُقَبل الضفدعة
wash the dress	تغسل الفستان	feed the dogs	يُطعِم الكلاب

Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in - (ed)

- نطق الأفعال فى زمن الماضى البسيط عندما يضاف (ed) فى نهايتها.

نهاية الأفعال تنطق إما / t / أو /d / أو /id/

- هناك ثلاث حالات لنطق الفعل عندما يضاف له (ed) فى زمن الماضى البسيط سندرس فى هذه الوحدة حالتين:

الحالة الأولى: إذا انتهى الفعل بإحدى هذه الحروف (sh, ch, ce, f, k, ke, p, ss, gh, x)

فى هذه الحالة تنطق نهاية الفعل مثل حرف (t)

ed → /t/

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى
bake	يخبز	baked		chop	يقطع	chopped	
walk	يمشى	walked		cook	يطهو	cooked	
kiss	يقبل	kissed		laugh	يضحك	laughed	
dance	يرقص	danced		talk	يتكلم	talked	
ask	يسأل	asked		brush	ينظف بالفرشاة	brushed	
wash	يغسل	washed		watch	يشاهد	watched	
look	ينظر	looked		jump	يقفز	jumped	

الحالة الثانية: أما إذا انتهى الفعل بإحدى هذه الحروف (b, g, m, n, ll, r, v, z, s, y) فإن الـ (ed) فى نهاية الفعل تنطق مثل حرف (d)

ed → /d/

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
call	يتصل	called	water	يروى (يسقى)	watered
pull	يَجر / يسحب	pulled	play	يلعب	played
clean	ينظف	cleaned	study	يذاكر	studied
listen	يَستمع	listened	use	يستخدم	used
climb	يتسلق	climbed	carry	يحمل	carried

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :



B Do they both have the same -ed sound? Listen and circle (✓) or (×).

استمع الى الكلمات الآتية وضع دائرة على (✓) إذا كان بها نفس نطق (- ed) ودائرة على (×) إذا كان مختلف فى نطق (- ed) (الإجابة فى آخر الوحدة).

1. washed	2. climbed	3. cooked	4. listened
talked	walked	studied	played
✓ ×	✓ ×	✓ ×	✓ ×

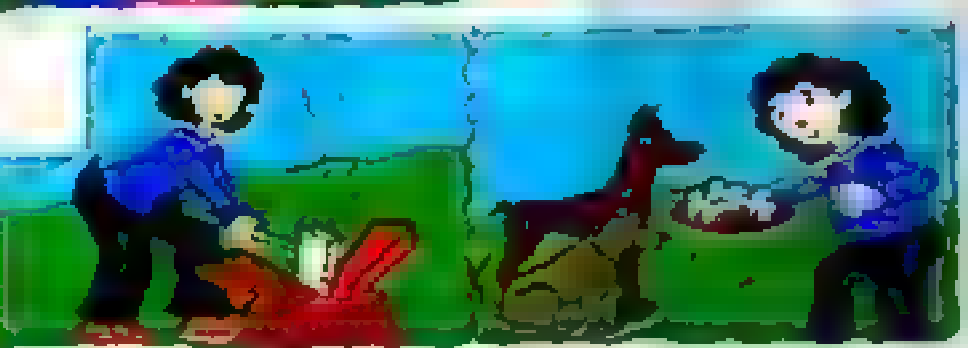
Unit

C Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

اقرأ الجُمل واكتب الرقم على الصورة المناسبة ثم استمع . (الإجابة فى آخر الوحدة)

1- She brushed the cat and washed her dress.
2- She baked a pie and played some chess.
3- She chopped the logs and fed the dogs.
4- And then, she called her mother.







Exercises on Lesson 4




1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	walked / talked	2	washed / watched	3	called / cleaned

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار   كفر الشيخ - إدارة فوة 2014

Nadia : How are you?
Seham : Fine, thank you.
Nadia : What did you do yesterday?
Seham : I ❶ .... pies.
Nadia : ❷ .... helped you?
Seham : My sister Laila did.
Nadia : What ❸ .... of pies do you like?
Seham : I like ❹ .... and orange pies.



3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box

cookies - chess - helped - washed - called

My friend Amira is a good girl. She ❶ .... her mother yesterday. She baked ❷ .... Then, she ❸ .... the dishes. She brushed the cat. And she played ❹ .... with her mother.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- you - chop - Did - carrots - the?

....

2- her - Rasha - cat - brushed.

....

3- bake - What - your - did - mother?

....

4- studied - I - yesterday - English.

....

5 Look and write a question and its answer





1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

6 Punctuate the following sentences

1- i called my friend noha last sunday

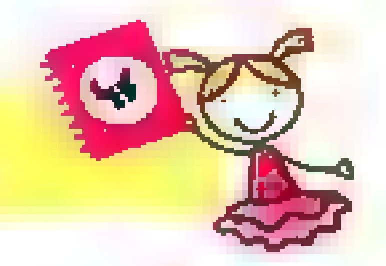
....

2- did you play with ahmed and fatma   الشرقية - إدارة مشتول 2015

....

Unit

Remember



Vocabulary المفردات

Leisure activities انشطة وقت الفراغ

drink juice	يشرب عصير	see a show	يشاهد عرض
win a prize	يفوز بجائزة	buy tickets	يشترى تذاكر
eat cotton candy	يأكل حلوى غزل البنات	have lunch	يتناول وجبة الغداء
go on a ride	يذهب لركوب لعبة فى الملاهى	take pictures	يلتقط صور

Food and drinks

pineapple	أناناس	spaghetti	مكرونة اسباجتى
juice	عصير	popcorn	فيشار
pie	فطيرة	cookies	كعك
chicken	دجاج مطهى		

Adjectives صفات

hot	حار	hungry	جوعان
thirsty	عطشان	enough	كافى

Places أماكن

snack bar	مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة	amusement park	حديقة الملاهى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
bake يخبز	baked	get يحصل على	got
chop يقطع	chopped	do / does يفعل	did
walk يمشي	walked	have/has يتناول/يمتلك	had
dance يرقص	danced	drink يشرب	drank
kiss يُقبّل	kissed	win يفوز	won
laugh يضحك	laughed	see يرى	saw
carry يحمل	carried	buy يشتري	bought
brush ينظف بالفرشاة	brushed	take يأخذ	took
call يتصل بـ	called	write يكتب	wrote
study يذاكر	studied	go يذهب	went



Grammar قواعد

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

- يعبر عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.
- يتكون بإضافة (ied / d / ed) للفعل المنتظم وأفعال شاذة (غير منتظمة) تُحفظ تصريفاتها.

- He brushed his hair. - I saw the snow.

Negative: النفى

- لنفى زمن الماضي البسيط نستخدم:

❶ الفاعل + ❷ did not (= didn't) + ❸ inf. مصدر الفعل

- We saw a show. → - We didn't see a show.
- They won a prize. → - They didn't win a prize.

تسميع الكلمات

انجليزى ← عربى

cookies	....	wash the dress	....
brush the cat	....	enough	....
spaghetti	....	amusement park	....
go on a ride	....	hungry	....
call her mother	....	juice	....
wash the pots	....	chop the logs	....

عطشان	....	فيشار	....
نوع	....	نقود	....
حلوى غزل البنات	....	عصير أناناس	....
يلتقط صورة	....	جائزة	....
يتناول الغداء	....	يشترى تذاكر	....
يخبز فطيرة	....	يشرب عصير	....
يُقِل الضفدعة	....	يلعب شطرنج	....

Remember

Writing skills مهارات الكتابة — Unit 2

السؤال السابع فى ورقة الامتحان:

7 Look and write a question and its answer:

انظر واكتب السؤال الاجابة:

1.


- **What does the boy want?**
  He wants orange juice.

2.


- **What did she buy?**
  She bought a ticket.

3.


- **What are they eating?**
  They are eating cotton candy.

4.


- **Where's the boy?**
  He is at the amusement park.

السؤال الثامن فى ورقة الامتحان:

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:

انظر واكتب فقرة انشائية من أربعة جمل:

- **Use the following guiding words:**

lunch - drink - prize - happy



The family are having lunch. Kareem is drinking juice. The boy won a prize. He is happy.

- **Use the following guiding words:**

girls - eat - take - pictures

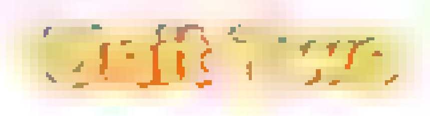


There are three girls. They are eating cotton candy. The woman has a camera. She's taking pictures.



Test 2





A- Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle **(6 marks)**

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	brushed / washed
2	wrote / bought
3	frog / dog

2 Listen and complete **(6 marks)**

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — الوادى الجديد - إدارة الوادى الجديد 2014

Mona : It's so hot. I'm really thirsty.

Kareem : Me, too. Let's get ❶ .... juice.

Mona : ❷ .... kind of juice do you want?

Kareem : Pineapple ❸ .... , please.

Mona : ❹ .... you like it?

Kareem : Yes, it's my favourite.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: **(5 marks)**

					Answer
1	took	walk	washed	wrote	....
2	salad	popcorn	dress	pie	....
3	chess	sister	mother	brother	....
4	thirsty	hot	show	hungry	....
5	park	man	boy	woman	....



Writing skills

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: **(4 marks)**

on - chess - of - show - amusement

I do a lot of activities on holiday. I go to the (1) .... park. I go (2) .... a ride. I see a (3) .... there. Then, I play (4) .. .. with my friends. I have a nice time there.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: **(5 marks)**

الغربية - إدارة السنطة 2015

Last week, Ali's family went to the park. Ali's father bought tickets. They had lunch at three o'clock. They saw a show. Ali's brother won a prize. Ali's sister ate cotton candy. They went home by car. They were happy.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Last month, Ali's family went to the park.		
2	Ali's father bought tickets.		
3	Ali's sister ate cotton candy.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Who won a prize?

....

5- How did Ali's family go home?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences **(4 marks)**

القاهرة - إدارة شرق 2016

1- pictures - didn't - I - take.

....

2- Maha - cookies - baked - yesterday.

....

Test

3- amusement - park - Where - is - the? القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2015

....

4- drink - Did - juice - you?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer (4 marks)

1. ....? 2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences (4 marks)

• **Use the following guiding words:**

amusement park - cotton candy - went on - show

الجيزة - إدارة العياط 2016

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- he didn t play on saturday

....

2- did mona and noha play cards الشرقية - إدارة مشتول السوق 2016

....

Test 3 on Units 1&2



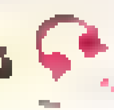
A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — الإسكندرية - المنتزه 2015

1	slide smile
2	tree three
3	baked called

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)



نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Ayman : Wake up, Waleed.

Waleed : ❶ .... time is it, Ayman?

Ayman : It's seven ❷ .... It's time for breakfast.

Waleed : What's ❸ .... breakfast?

Ayman : We are having beans and ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	water	milk	juice	bread	....
2	chess	giraffe	frog	cat	....
3	mother	flower	father	brother	....
4	look	three	seven	nine	....
5	spaghetti	cheese	call	chicken	....

Test

4 (4 marks)

1- My brother .... at jokes.
   a. **brushed**   b. **played**   c. **laughed**   d. **ate**

2- What's .... breakfast?
   a. **on**   b. **for**   c. **of**   d. **to**

3- She didn't .... cotton candy.
   a. **eating**   b. **ate**   c. **eat**   d. **eats**

4- Fatma is washing the .... and pans.
   a. **pies**   b. **pots**   c. **eggs**   d. **books**

5 Read the passage and answer the questions (5 marks)

Every Friday, I get up at six o'clock. It's time for breakfast. My mother cooks breakfast. The breakfast smells good. We're having beans and eggs. My favourite food for breakfast is eggs.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	My sister cooks breakfast.		
2	The lunch smells good.		
3	We're having beans and eggs.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Who cooks breakfast?

....

5- When do you get up?

....

C Writing (14 marks)

6 (4 marks)

1- watched - Ahmed - sunrise - the.

....

2- he - Did - on - a ride - go?

....

3- I - two - have - o'clock - at - lunch.

....

4- do - What - Omnya - did?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

- **Use the following guiding words:**

park - slide - fish - peaches

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- it s hot in aswan

....

2- is today friday, tamer

....

Unit

Listening materials

Unit 2



Exercises - Lesson 1

1- Listen and complete:

Mona : It's so hot. Let's get some juice.
F : What **kind** of juice do you want?
M : **Orange** juice, please.
R : **Do** you want some popcorn?
M : Yes, I do.
R : Oh! I don't have enough money.
M : That's okay. It's my **treat**.

Exercises - Lesson 2

1- Listen and complete:

Osman : Where did you go yesterday?
Farah : I went to the amusement park.
Osman : Did you **take** pictures?
Farah : Yes, I did. I ate **cotton** candy, too.
Osman : Did you win a **prize**?
Farah : No, I didn't. I went on a **ride**.

Lesson 4

Phonics Time

B) Do they both have the same -ed sound? Listen and circle (✓) or (✗):

1- ✓ 2- ✗ 3- ✗ 4- ✓

C) Read the sentences. Write the numbers. then listen:

2, 4, 3, 1

Exercises - Lesson 4

1- Listen and circle:

1- talked 2- washed 3- cleaned

2- Listen and complete:

Nadia : How are you?
Seham : Fine, thank you.
Nadia : What did you do yesterday?
Seham : I **baked** pies.
Nadia : **Who** helped you?
Seham : My sister Laila did.
Nadia : What **kinds** of pies do you like?
Seham : I like **apple** and orange pies.

Test 2 - Unit 2

1- Listen and circle:

1- brushed 2- bought 3- frog

2- Listen and complete:

Mona : It's so **hot**. I'm really thirsty.
Kareem : Me, too. Let's get **some** juice.
Mona : **What** kind of juice do you want?
Kareem : Pineapple **juice**, please.
Mona : **Do** you like it?
Kareem : Yes, It's my favourite.

Test 3 - Units 1 & 2

1- Listen and circle:

1- slide 2- three 3- called

2- Listen and complete:

Ayman : Wake up, Waleed.
Waleed : **What** time is it, Ayman?
Ayman : It's seven **o'clock**. It's time for breakfast.
Waleed : What's **for** breakfast?
Ayman : We are having beans and **eggs**.



Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time — Lesson 1 - SB: P. 9 / WB: P. 9

- offer help — تقديم المساعدة
- express gratitude — التعبير عن الامتنان
- express a physical state — التعبير عن الحالة البدنية
- inquire about past activities — الاستفسار عن أنشطة في الماضي
- identify speakers in a conversation — التعرف على المتحدثين في محادثة

Word Time — Lesson 2 - SB: P. 10 / WB: P. 10

- write and read sentences — كتابة و قراءة جمل
- everyday household chores — تعلم مفردات المهام المنزلية اليومية

Practice Time — Lesson 3 - SB: P. 11 / WB: P. 11

- Wh- questions (What?) simple past — السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام باستخدام (ماذا؟) فى زمن الماضى البسيط
- Irregular simple past — استخدام الأفعال غير المنتظمة فى الماضى البسيط

Phonics Time — Lesson 4 - SB: P. 12 / WB: P. 12

- identify sound of final (ed) — التعرف على صوت (ed) فى نهاية الكلمات
- associate sound of letters with written form — ربط أصوات الحروف بصيغة كتابتها

Unit



Conversation Time
وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 9
WB Page: 9



Vocabulary المفردات

Adjectives صفات

heavy	ثقيل	careful	حريص
strong	قوى	okay	بخير / بحالة جيدة
quiet	هادئ		

Nouns أسماء

problem	مشكلة	skateboard	لوح التزحلق
money	نقود	box	صندوق

Expressions تعبيرات

No problem.	لا مشكلة.	I think so.	أعتقد ذلك.
Watch out!	احترس!	Be careful.	كن حذرًا.
Be back	عد / ارجع	Be quiet.	كن هادئًا.
by six	قبل الساعة السادسة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
carry يحمل	carried	think يعتقد / يفكر	thought
help يساعد	helped	let يدع / يسمح	let
look at ينظر إلى	looked at		



Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم

- Let me help you, Mum. دعني أساعدك يا أمي.
- Be careful. It's heavy. كن حذرًا / احترس. إنها ثقيلة.
- No problem. لا توجد مشكلة.
- I'm strong. أنا قوى.
- Yes, you are. نعم، أنت كذلك.
- Are you okay? هل أنت بخير؟
- I think so. But look at my skateboard. أعتقد ذلك. ولكن انظرى إلى لوح التزحلق الخاص بي.
- Be back by six. ارجع قبل الساعة السادسة.

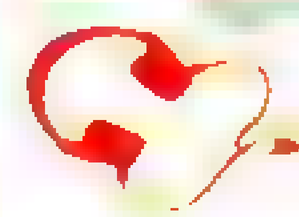
Listen and repeat. استمع وردد:

Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين:

Role-play the conversation with a partner. تبادل الأدوار مع زميلك:

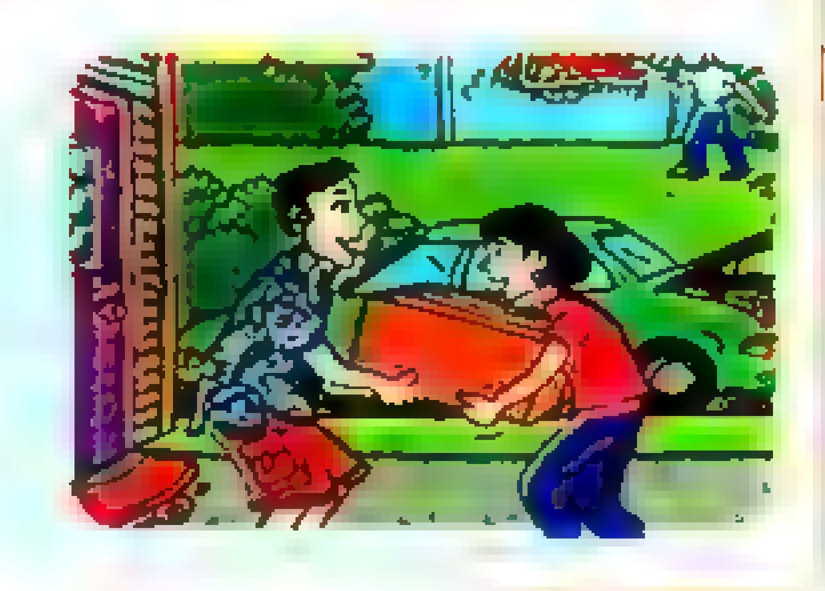


Tapescript نص الاستماع

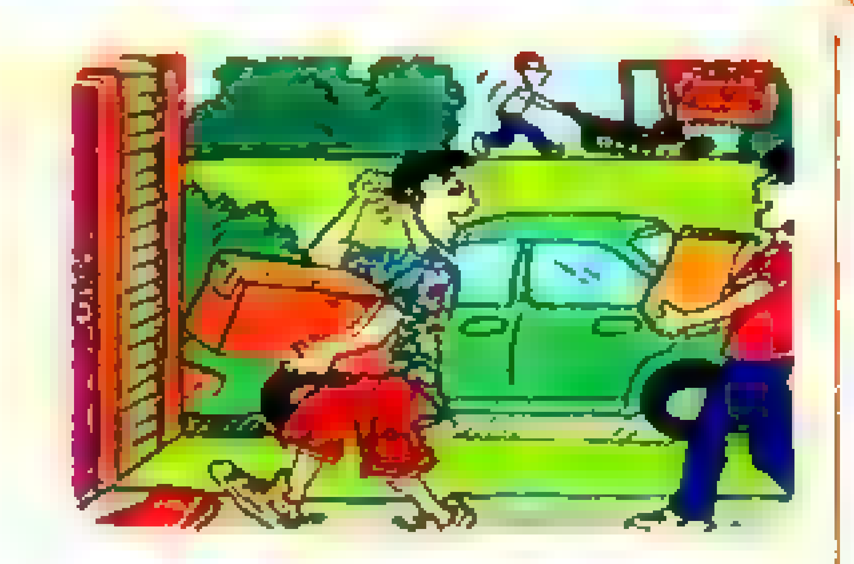


1 **Boy** : Let me help you, Mum.

Woman : Thanks. Be careful. It's heavy.

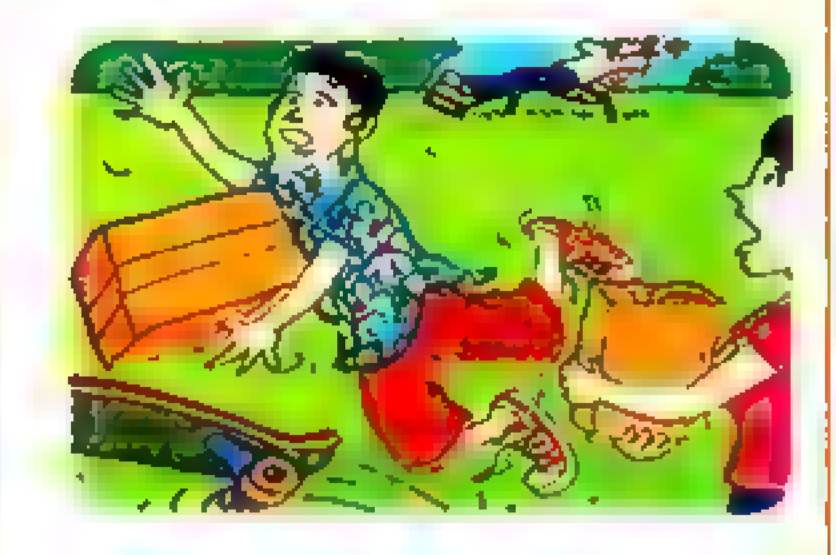


Unit 3



2 **Boy** : No problem. I'm strong.

Woman : Yes, you are.



3 **Boy** : Help!

Woman : Watch out!



4 **Woman** : Are you okay?

Boy : I think so. But look at my skateboard.

Review. Listen and repeat. راجع. استمع وردد:

 : What kind of juice do you want?

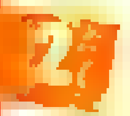
 : Orange juice, please.

Uh- oh! I don't have enough money.

 : That's okay. It's my treat.

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية





1 Be + صفة (لاعطاء الأمر)

Be quiet. كن هادئًا. Be careful. احترس.

- Be quiet. The baby is sleeping. كن هادئًا. الطفل نائم.
- Be careful. The box is heavy. كن حذرًا. الصندوق ثقيل.

2 By + وقت/ زمن (قبل)

- I'll meet him by ten o'clock. سوف أقابله قبل الساعة العاشرة.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



١- عرض المساعدة :

Let + ❶ مفعول/ ضمير مفعول + ❷ inf. ❸ مصدر الفعل

- Let me help you. دعنى أساعدك.

٢- التعبير عن الامتنان :

- Thank you. / Thanks. شكراً لك.

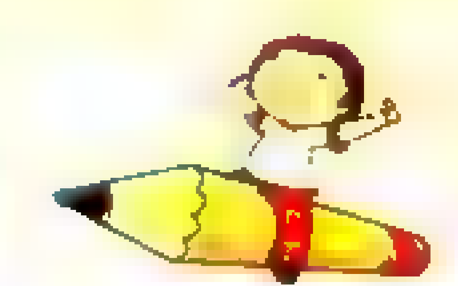
٣- التعبير عن الحالة البدنية :

- I'm strong. أنا قوى.

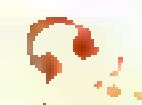
٤- التحذير :

- Be careful! كن حذراً!
- Watch out! احترس!

Exercises on Lesson 



1 Listen and complete:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Hazem : Let me help you, Mum.
Mother : Thanks. Be ❶ .... .The box is heavy.
Hazem : No ❷ .... .I'm strong.
Mother : Oh. ❸ .... out! Are you okay?
Hazem : I think so.
Mother : How about your ❹ ....?
Hazem : It is not okay.

2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one

					Answer
1	father	mother	brother	house	....
2	heavy	problem	strong	happy	....
3	think	help	box	carry	....
4	by	of	on	me	....
5	careful	pineapple	orange	apple	....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- The box is very .... I can't carry it.
a. heavy b. happy c. strong d. careful

2- I like to play with my .... at the park.
a. pot b. skateboard c. pencil d. dress

3- No .... I'm strong.
a. careful b. watch out c. problem d. heavy

4- Sh! Be .... I want to listen to the teacher.
a. back b. quiet c. careful d. sad

5- Watch .... ! The car is coming.

a. by b. out c. on d. at

6- Thanks. Be .... It's heavy.

a. thirsty b. hungry c. careful d. problem

4 Read the passage and answer the questions

القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر 2014

My name is Ali. I'm a pupil. I get up at six o'clock. I have breakfast with my mother and father. My father is a vet and my mother is a teacher. I have two sisters. I go to school by bus. I go home at two. I do my homework at four. I go to bed at ten.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Ali is a teacher.		
2	He walks to school.		
3	He has breakfast with his family.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What does Ali do at four o'clock?

....

5- When does Ali come back from school?

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- okay - Is - skateboard - your?

....

2- me - Let - you - help.

....

3- box - the - Is - heavy?

....

4- so - don't - I - think.

....

5- enough - don't - money - I - have.

....

6- of - do - want - What kind - juice - you?

....

6

الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة 2014

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

7 Punctuate the following.

الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2015

1- let s call nagy

....

2- are rawan and israa okay

....



Word Time وقت الكلمات

SB Page: 10
WB Page: 10





make the bed يرتب السرير (الفراش)



feed the pets يطعم الحيوانات المنزلية



sweep the floor
يكنس أرضية الحجرة



take out the rubbish
يخرج/ يتخلص من القمامة



do the laundry
تقوم بغسيل الملابس



hang up the clothes
تعلق الملابس على شماعة



put away the groceries
يضع البقالة فى مكانها المعتاد



set the table
يعد / يجهز المائدة



Unit

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
make يُعد / يصنع	made	feed يطعم	fed
sweep يكنس	swept	take يأخذ	took
do يفعل	did	hang يعلق	hung
put يضع	put	set يعد / يجهز	set

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

– يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن شيء يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

– ويستخدم أيضًا لوصف صورة.

Form: التكوين

I → am
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → is
We, You, They, اسم جمع → are
} + V + ing

• لاحظ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يحذف (e) ونضيف ing.

make → making   take → taking

• وهناك بعض الأفعال يضاعف بها الحرف الأخير عند اضافة ing.

put → putting   set → setting

Question: السؤال

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام فى زمن المضارع المستمر.

❶ أداة استفهام + ❷ is → ❸ he / she / it ❹ + V+ing?
are → you / they

• لاحظ الأسئلة الآتية والرد عليها فى زمن المضارع المستمر باستخدام الفعل doing.



- What is he doing?

He is feeding the pets.



- What are they doing?

They are taking out the rubbish.

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

Point and say the words. أشر وقل الكلمات:

WORD TIME

استمع الى نص الاستماع وردد الكلمات:

1. make the bed
2. feed the pets
3. sweep the floor
4. take out the rubbish
5. do the laundry
6. hang up the clothes
7. put away the groceries
8. set the table



Unit 1

Listen and point. : استمع وأشر

• استمع وأشر إلى الكلمات الآتية في الصورة السابقة.

- Feed the pets.
- Take out the rubbish.
- Do the laundry.
- Make the bed.
- Sweep the floor.
- Put away the groceries.
- Set the table.
- Hang up the clothes.

• استمع إلى الحوارات الآتية وأشر إلى المتحدثين في الصورة السابقة.



1 A : Let me help you. They're heavy.
B : Thanks. Be careful.
A : No problem. I'm strong.

2 A : Hello?
B : Hello. Is Sameh there?
A : I'm sorry. You have the wrong number.

Answers

1- (people by rubbish bins) أشخاص بجوار سلات القمامة

2- (man setting table) رجل يعد منضدة

Write the words. :اكتب الكلمات

اكتب الكلمات في القاموس الخاص في نهاية الكتاب المدرسي صفحات (٣٢ ٣٤).

Exercises on Lesson 2





1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	hung	did	took	sweep	....
2	made	fed	black	hung	....
3	bed	table	chair	juice	....
4	floor	Nesma	Hanaa	Mona	....
5	do	put	bed	make	....

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box

clothes - rubbish - does - sweeps - eats

Fatma helps her mother, Sama. She makes the bed. She ❶ .... the floor. She takes out the ❷ .... She hangs up the ❸ .... She ❹ .... the laundry. Fatma likes her mother very much.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- Sameh .... the table for lunch.
   a. puts   b. hangs   c. makes   d. sets

2- My mother .... the laundry every week.
   a. feeds   b. takes   c. does   d. sweeps

3- Magdy is .... up the clothes.
   a. hanging   b. helping   c. sweeping   d. doing

4- Ramy is .... the floor.
   a. sleeping   b. sweeping
   c. putting away   d. hanging

5- At nine, Nader takes .... the rubbish.
   a. at   b. on   c. out   d. in

Unit

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- they - **What** - doing - are?

....

2- rubbish - out - **She** - the - took. — الشرقية - إدارة غرب الزقازيق 2014

....

3- **He** - bed - made - the. — المنيا - إدارة بنى مزار 2014

....

4- laundry - like - doing - **Do** - you - the?

....

5 Look and write a question and its answer

أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2014

1. ....? 2. ....?

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences

• **Use the following guiding words:** — الجيزة - إدارة بولاق 2015

sweep - rubbish - make - hang

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following

1- what s ahmed doing — الغربية - إدارة السنطة 2015

....

2- let s feed the pets, ramy

....

Practice Time وقت التدريب



Grammar قواعد لغوية

Wh- questions in the past simple tense
السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط

① What ما / ماذا, Where أين, Why لماذا, When متى + ② did + ③ الفاعل + ④ inf. مصدر الفعل ..?

وفى الإجابة نستخدم: ① فاعل + ② فعل فى التصريف الثانى + ③ باقى الجملة

- Why did you come late? لماذا أتيت متأخراً؟
  Because I went to bed late.
- What did you do yesterday? ماذا فعلت بالأمس؟
  I fed the birds.
- Where did you see the show? أين شاهدت العرض؟
  I saw it at the amusement park.
- When did he set the table? متى أعدَّ المائدة؟
  He set it at three o'clock.

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد:

What did she do? She swept the floor.

make → made	feed → fed	sweep → swept	set → set
take → took	do → did	hang → hung	put → put

Unit

Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد. ثم تدرب مع زميلك:

– يستخدم التلاميذ كلمة الاستفهام "What" للسؤال عن ماذا فعل الأشخاص فى الصور الآتية:

1 What did she do?

She made the bed.

she/do? make the bed



2 What did he do?

He fed the pets.

he/do? feed the pets



3 What did you do?

I put away the groceries.



4 What did she do?

She did the laundry.

she/do? do the laundry

5 What did they do?

They took out the rubbish.

they/do? take out the rubbish



6 What did you do?

I set the table.

you/do? set the table

C Look at page 10. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

انظر إلى صفحة 10 بالكتاب المدرسي . أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميلك .

S1 : (Pointing to the girl sweeping the floor):

– يشير التلميذ الأول إلى البنت التي تكنس الأرضية ويقول :

What did she do?

– ماذا فعلت ؟

S2 : She swept the floor.

– ويجيب التلميذ الثاني ويقول : هي كنست الأرضية .

D Listen and chant.

استمع وغن:

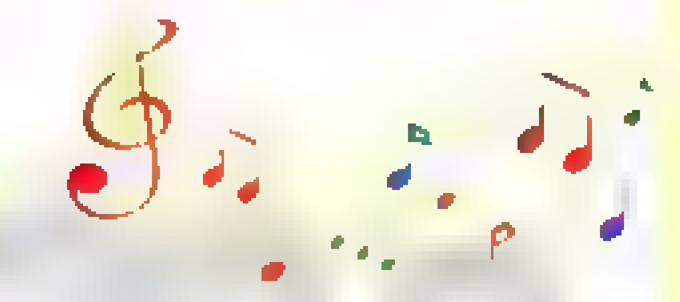
– يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية ماذا فعلت؟ (What Did You Do?) ويرددونها: (SB Page 30)

The SONG

What Did You Do?

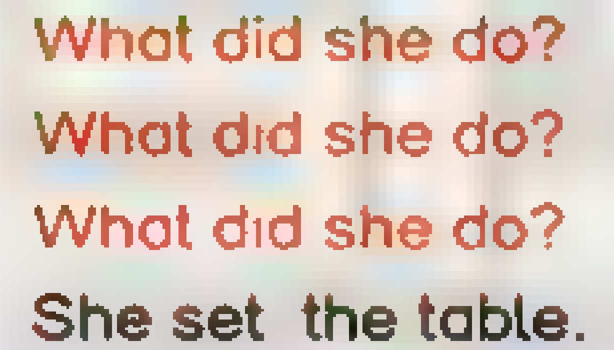
What did you do?
What did you do?
What did you do?
We made the bed.







What did she do?
What did she do?
What did she do?
She set the table.





What did he do?
What did he do?
What did he do?
He swept the floor.



What did they do?
What did they do?
What did they do?
They did the laundry.



Exercises on Lesson 



1 Listen and complete.

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Nader : What did you do yesterday?

Essam : I ❶ .... away the groceries.

Nader : Did you take out the ❷ ....?

Essam : No, I ❸ .... I set the table.

Nader : ❹ .... did you set the table?

Essam : Before lunch.

2 Circle the odd one out then replace it with a correct one

					Answer
1	did	made	hung	rubbish	....
2	Samy	Sarah	Osama	Seif	....
3	What	Where	away	When	....
4	bed	take	table	chair	....
5	sweep	fed	see	do	....

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box

المنيا - إدارة العدوة 2015

laundry - pets - lazy - hanging - putting

Everyone is busy today. Mona's grandmother is ❶ .... up the clothes. The ❷ .... are eating their food in the yard. Mona's sister is doing the ❸ .... Mona is in her bedroom making her bed. Mona's brother is ❹ .... away the groceries.



4 Choose the correct answer:

1- She .... out the rubbish last night.
a. take b. takes c. taking d. took

2- What .. .. .. he hang up? الجيزة - إدارة بولاق 2015
a. do b. did c. is d. was

3- What did Hazem sweep? - He .... the floor.
a. sweep b. sweeps c. swept d. sweeping

4- A: .. .. did you do? B: I fed the pets.
a. Where b. When c. What d. Why

5- What did he.................. ?
a. makes b. made c. make d. making

5 Read the passage and answer the questions

بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد 2015

Sarah and Israa helped grandmother yesterday. They swept the floor, took out the rubbish, made the bed, hung up the clothes and did the laundry for grandmother. Grandmother wanted to set the table for lunch, but Sarah and Israa did that for her. Grandmother was happy. She kissed Sarah and Israa. They kissed grandmother, too.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Sarah and Israa didn't help grandmother.		
2	Grandmother set the table for lunch.		
3	Grandmother was happy.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Sarah and Israa take out?

....

5- Why did grandmother kiss Sarah and Israa?

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- feed - she - Did - pets - the? — الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين 2015

....

2- do - the - She - laundry - didn't.

....

3- you - lunch - Did - cook? — الإسكندرية - إدارة العامرية 2015

....

4- up - He - clothes - hung - his.

....

7 Look at the picture and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:

• **Use the following guiding words:**

boy - cat - feed - like

البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة 2015

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- did noha feed the cat on friday

....

2- no he isn t here — الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2014

....



Phonics Time وقت الصوتيات

SB Page: 12
WB Page: 12



Vocabulary المفردات

• تم شرح الحالة الأولى والثانية عن كيفية نطق الأفعال فى زمن الماضى البسيط بإضافة (ied)/(d)/(ed)

• الحالة الثالثة : إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد هذه الحروف (te - t - d)

فإن (ed) ← فى نهاية الفعل تنطق /id/ .

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

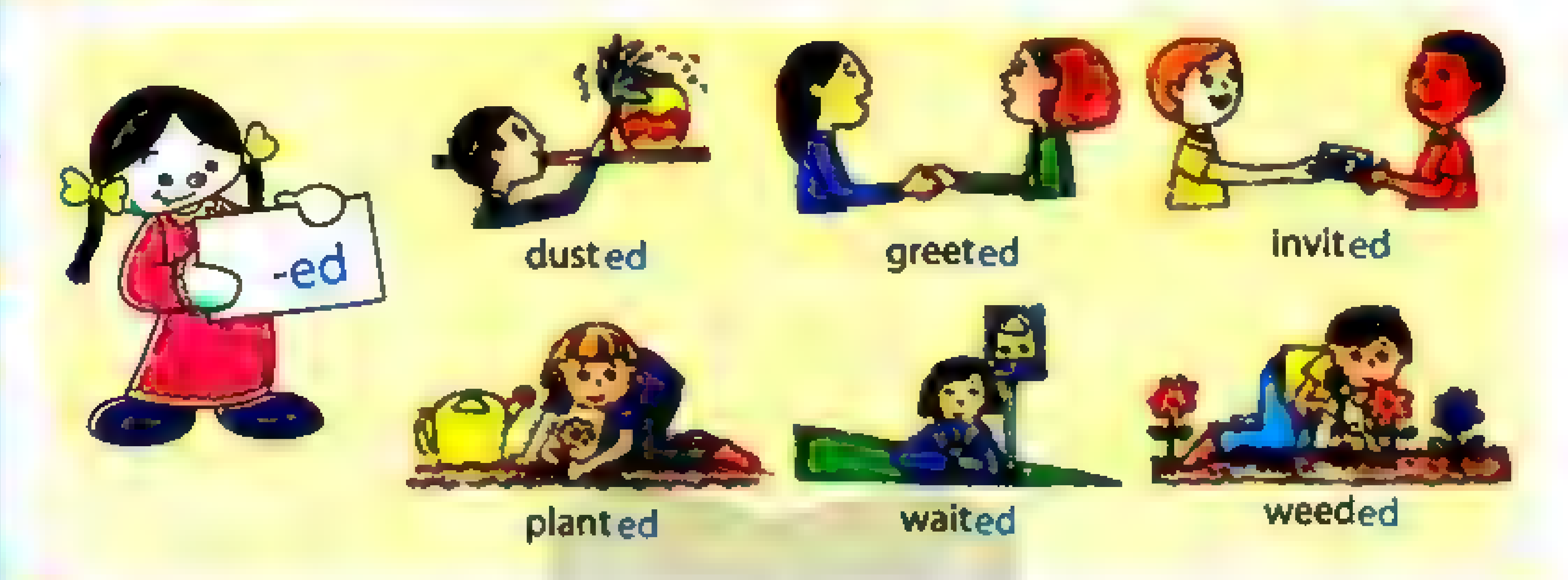
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى
dust	ينفض التراب	dusted	/id/
greet	يُحيّى	greeted	
invite	يدعو	invited	
plant	يزرع	planted	
roast	يحمص / يشوى	roasted	
need	يحتاج	needed	
wait	ينتظر	waited	
weed	يزيل الحشائش الضارة	weeded	
paint	يرسم / يدهن	painted	
count	يعد / يحسب	counted	
fold	يطوى / يلف	folded	
want	يريد	wanted	

Other words كلمات أخرى

seed	بذرة نبات	garden	حديقة
so	لذلك	ant	نملة

Unit

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :



Do they both end with the same sound? Listen and put (✓) or (×).

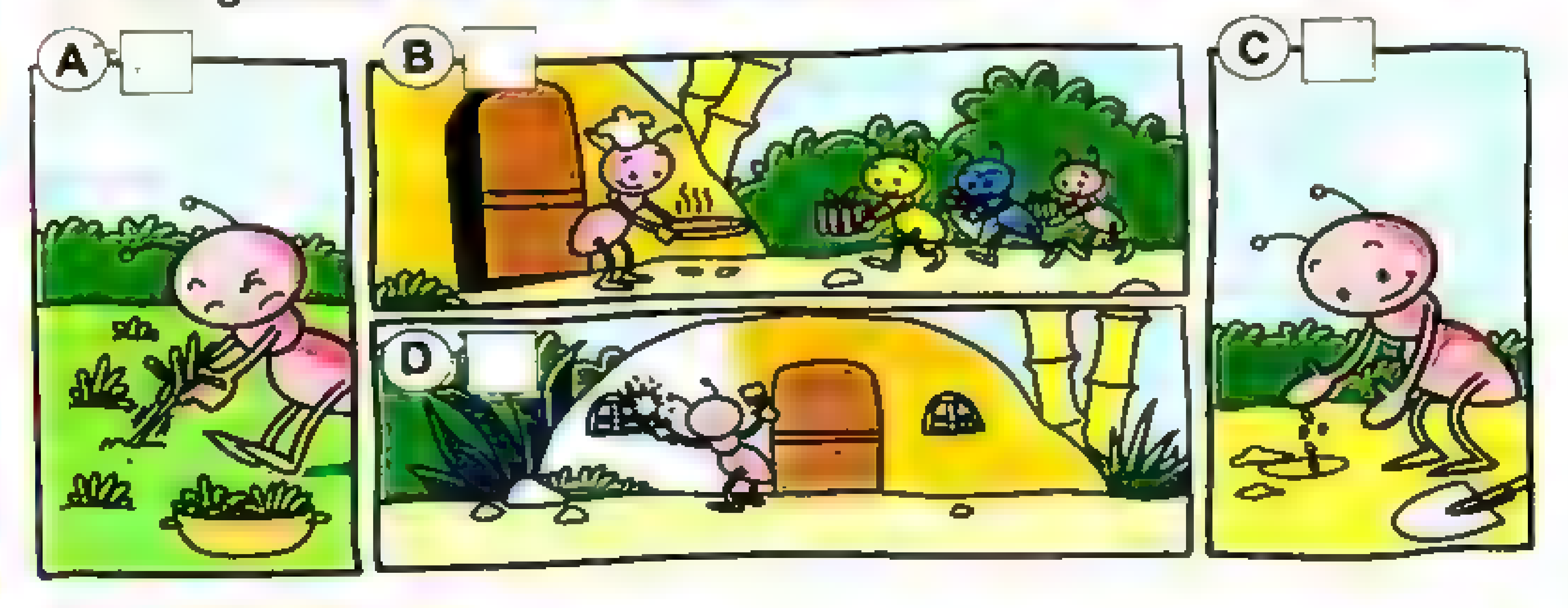
• هل تنتهي الكلمات الآتية بنفس صوت الحرفين ed ؟ استمع وضع علامة (✓) إذا كان نفس النطق وعلامة (×) إذا كان مختلف النطق (الإجابة أخر الوحدة).

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
painted	baked	called	needed	weeded
counted ☐	roasted ☐	waited ☐	folded ☐	dusted ☐

Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

اقرأ الجُمل واكتب الرقم على الصورة المناسبة ثم استمع (الإجابة أخر الوحدة).

1- An ant wanted a home, so she planted a seed.
2- She waited and waited, and weeded and weeded.
3- Then she dusted, painted and invited her sisters for lunch.
4- She greeted them with roasted beans.





Exercises on Lesson 4




1 Listen and circle.


نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار   أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2015

1	2	3
planted painted	waited weeded	counted called

2 Listen and complete:


نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Amal : What did you do yesterday?

Mona : I ❶ .... my friends for lunch.

Amal : What did you ❷ .... ?

Mona : We ate ❸ .... chicken and rice.

Amal : Did they like the ❹ .... ?

Mona : Yes, they did.

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	greeted	home	waited	invited	....
2	Amr	Ali	Ahmed	Saturday	....
3	morning	picture	evening	night	....
4	clean	weed	paint	lunch	....
5	needed	waited	plant	roasted	....

4

greets - plants - dusts - weeds - invites

My uncle has a beautiful house. He 1 .... flowers and trees around it. He 2 .... the garden every Friday. He 3 .... his friends at home. He 4 .... them when they come.

5

1- lunch - set - the table - My - sister - for. 2015 الغربية - إدارة السنطة

....

2- flowers - Did - plant - he - yesterday?

....

3- planted - a - Ramy - seed.

....

4- hang up - Did - clothes - he - the?

....

6

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

7

1- ashraf s family roasted meat on monday

....

2- did yasser invite his friend hany

....

Remember



Vocabulary المفردات

Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتى مع أسماء

make the bed	يرتب السرير	feed the pets	يطعم الحيوانات الأليفة
sweep the floor	يكنس أرضية الحجرة	take out the rubbish	يخرج/ يتخلص من القمامة
put away the groceries	يضع البقالة فى مكانها المعتاد	hang up the clothes	تعلق الملابس على شماعة
set the table	يعد / يجهز المائدة	do the laundry	تقوم بغسيل الملابس

Adjectives صفات

heavy	ثقيل	careful	حريص
strong	قوى		

Other words كلمات أخرى

problem	مشكلة	skateboard	لوحة التزحلق
seed	بذرة نبات	box	صندوق
money	نقود	garden	حديقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مصدر	Past ماضى	Present مصدر	Past ماضى
dust ينفض التراب	dusted	wait ينتظر	waited
greet يُحيّى	greeted	weed يزيل الحشائش الضارة	weeded

Unit 3

invite	يدعو	invited	paint	يرسم / يدهن	painted
plant	يزرع	planted	count	يعد / يحسب	counted
roast	يحمص / يشوى	roasted	fold	يطوى / يلف	folded
need	يحتاج	needed	want	يريد	wanted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضى	Present	مضارع	Past ماضى
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	put	يضع	put
let	يسمح	let	feed	يطعم	fed
make	يعد / يصنع	made	take	يأخذ	took
sweep	يكنس	swept	hang	يعلق	hung
do / does	يفعل	did	set	يعد / يجهز	set

Grammar قواعد اللغة



Wh- questions in the Past Simple
السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط

❶ What ما / ماذا؟ / Where أين؟ / Why لماذا؟ / When متى؟ + did ❷ + الفاعل ❸ + inf. مصدر الفعل ❹ ..?

وفى الإجابة نستخدم: فاعل ❶ + فعل فى التصريف الثانى ❷ + باقى الجملة ❸

- What did you do last week? ماذا فعلت الأسبوع الماضى؟
  I hung up the clothes. أنا علقت الملابس.
- What did you do yesterday? ماذا فعلت بالأمس؟
  I swept the floor. أنا كنست الأرضية.



Remember

سمّع الكلمات

groceries	....	problem	....
do the laundry	....	careful	....
want	....	take out the rubbish	....
plant	....	weed	....
invite	....	strong	....
roast	....	need	....

عربي ← إنجليزي

بذرة نبات	....	ثقيل	....
يعد المائدة	....	لوح التزحلق	....
تعلق الملابس على شماعة	....	يرتب السرير	....
يطعم الحيوانات المنزلية	....	يكنس أرضية الحجرة	....
يُحيي	....	ينتظر	....
ينفض التراب	....	نملة	....

Writing skills مهارات الكتابة Unit 3

السؤال السابع فى ورقة الامتحان:

7 Look and write a question and its answer: انظر واكتب السؤال والاجابة:

1. 

- **What did she do?**
  She made the bed.

2. 

- **Did he take out the rubbish ?**
  Yes, he did.

3. 

- **What are they doing?**
  They are feeding the pets.

4. 

- **What did she do?**
  She hung up the clothes.

السؤال الثامن فى ورقة الامتحان:

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: انظر واكتب فقرة انشائية من أربعة جمل:

- **Use the following guiding words:**

help - carry - heavy - skateboard



The boy is helping his mother. He wants to carry the box. The boy is strong but the box is heavy. He fell وقع on his skateboard.

hang - set - rubbish - groceries



My mother is hanging up the clothes. My father is setting the table. My grandfather is taking out the rubbish. My brother is putting away the groceries.



Test 4



Unit Three

A- Listening (12 marks)

1 Listen and circle: **(6 marks)**

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	cried / carried
2	garden / rubbish
3	sweep / feed

2 Listen and complete: **(6 marks)**

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — الشرقية - إدارة مشتول 2015

Teacher : Did you help your mother at home?

Pupil : Yes, I did.

Teacher : ❶ .... did you do?

Pupil : I made my bed and ❷ .... the floor.

Teacher : And did you ❸ .... the laundry?

Pupil : No, I ❹ ....My mother did it.

B- Reading (14 marks)

3 Circle the odd one and then replace it with a correct one: **(5 marks)**

					Answer
1	table	lunch	bed	chair	....
2	with	for	waited	in	....
3	Sunday	planted	weeded	greeted	....
4	house	garden	bedroom	roast	....
5	help	eat	did	hang	....



Test

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d (4 marks)

1- She .... the pets last night. الجيزة - إدارة بولاق 2015

a. feed b. feeds c. feeding d. fed

2- Huda .... the table for dinner. الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2015

a. sets b. makes c. hangs d. puts

3- A: .... Mona cook breakfast?- B: Yes, she did. الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين 2015

a. Do b. Does c. Did d. Is

4- We .... the garden. We made it beautiful.

a. greeted b. chopped c. roasted d. weeded

5 Read the passage then answer the questions (5 marks)

القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2015

Yesterday, Samy's mother was busy. She made the bed and hung up the clothes. She fed the pets. Samy's father took out the rubbish. Samy's mother did the laundry at three o'clock. They watched TV in the evening.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Yesterday, Samy's mother wasn't busy.		
2	Samy's mother took out the rubbish.		
3	Samy's mother did the laundry at three o'clock.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Who fed the pets?

....

5- When did Samy's mother watch TV?

....

C- Writing (14 marks)

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences (4 marks)

1- on - did - you - do - What - Friday?

....

2- He - bed - made - the. — المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء 2015

....

3- the - Did - laundry - do - she?

....

4- dusted - mother - My - room - the. — كفر الشيخ - إدارة بيلا 2015

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer (4 marks)

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences (4 marks)

- **Use the following guiding words:**

do - help - clean - sweep

سوهاج - إدارة طما 2015

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following (2 marks)

1- did you take out the rubbish hossam

....

2- dalia and heba dust the room every tuesday

....

Listening materials

Unit 3



Exercises - Lesson 1

1- Listen and complete:

Hazem : Let me help you, Mum.
Mother : Thanks. Be careful. The box is heavy.
Hazem : No problem. I'm strong.
Mother : Oh. Watch out. Are you okay?
Hazem : I think so.
Mother : How about your skateboard?
Hazem : It is not okay.

Exercises - Lesson 3

1- Listen and complete:

Nader : What did you do yesterday?
Essam : I put away the groceries.
Nader : Did you take out the rubbish?
Essam : No, I didn't I set the table.
Nader : When did you set the table?
Essam : Before lunch.

Phonics Time

B) Do they both end with the same sound? Listen and put ✓ or ×

1.✓ 2.× 3.× 4.✓ 5.×

C) Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

1. C 2. A 3.D 4.B

Exercises - Lesson 4

1- Listen and circle:

1- painted 2- weeded 3- counted

2- Listen and complete:

Amal : What did you do yesterday?
Mona : I invited my friends for lunch.
Amal : What did you eat?
Mona : We ate roasted chicken and rice.
Amal : Did they like the food?
Mona : Yes, they did.

Test 4 - Unit 3

1- Listen and circle:

1- cried 2- rubbish 3- sweep

2- Listen and complete:

Teacher : Did you help your mother at home?
Pupil : Yes, I did.
Teacher : What did you do?
Pupil : I made my bed and swept the floor.
Teacher : And did you do the laundry?
Pupil : No, I didn't. My mother did it.





Aims of unit

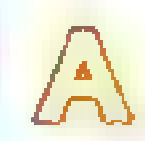
Story Time Lesson 1 - SB: P.13 / WB: P. 31

- participate in a conversation
- المشاركة فى محادثة
- identify meaning of a conversation
- التعرف على معنى محادثة

Activity Time Lesson 2 - SB: P.14 / WB: P. 32

- recognize and produce words vocabulary
- التعرف على الكلمات ومعانيها

Review 1



Story Time

Sokkara's World

SB Page: 13
WB Page: 31



A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

1
Sokkar : Let me help you, Sokkara.
Sokkara : Thank you, Sokkar.
Be careful. It's heavy.



2
Sokkar : No problem. I'm strong.
Sokkara : Yes, you are.
Sokkar : Did you cook breakfast?
Sokkara : Yes, I did.



3
Sokkar : Good! I'm hungry.
What's for breakfast?
Sokkara : We're having beans and eggs.





4 **Sokkar** : Help!

Sokkara : Watch out, Sokkar.



5 **Sokkara** : Are you okay, Sokkar?

Sokkar : I think so. But look at the breakfast!



6 **Sokkara** : Wake up, Sokkar. It's time for breakfast!

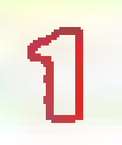
Look at A. Listen and point. انظر إلى التمرين (A) استمع وأشر:

Listen. Circle True or False. استمع وضع دائرة حول True أو False.

1	Sokkar helps Sokkara.	True	False
2	Sokkar is strong.	True	False
3	Sokkar cooked breakfast.	True	False
4	Sokkar isn't hungry.	True	False
5	Sokkara says, "It's time for breakfast!"	True	False

Role-play these scenes. قم بتمثيل الأدوار للمحادثة السابقة مع زملائك:

Review 1





Activity Time

SB Page: 14
WB Page: 32

A. Read and find the picture. Then write the letter.

أقرأ وأوجد الصورة. ثم اكتب الحرف.

1. Manal waited for the bus. C
2. Amr called his mother.
3. Samah smelled the flower and sneezed.
4. Ashraf baked a green cake.
5. Wael watched three fishes.
6. Amal cleaned the plane.





What did they do? Listen and circle a or b.

استمع إلى النص وضع دائرة حول الصورة الصحيحة.

1. Did they laugh at jokes?

   No, they didn't. They played cards.

2. She took pictures.

   She didn't buy tickets.

3. What did he do?

   He did the laundry.

4. Did he clean the tent?

Yes, he did.

5. They saw a show.

They didn't have dinner.

6. What did she do?

She fed the pets.

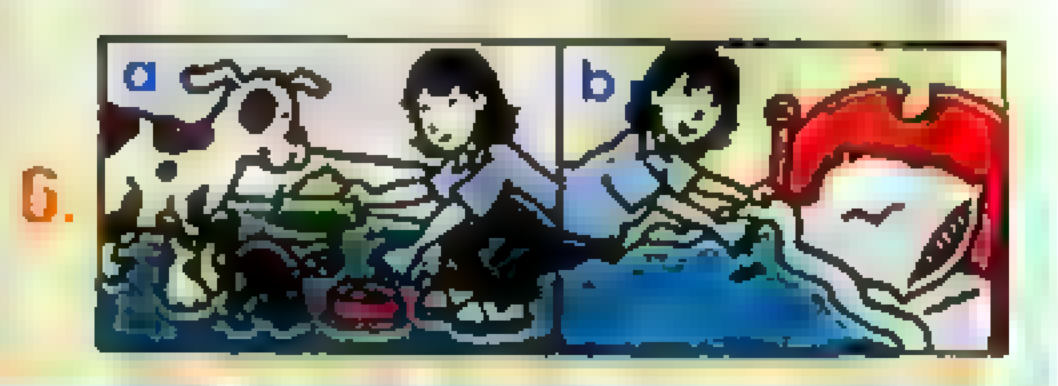
1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

6. 

C. Read the word. Then write the past form:

- اقرأ الأفعال واكتب صيغة الماضي البسيط لكل فعل.

1. buy	bought	2. do	....	3. drink	....
4. eat	....	5. feed	....	6. go	....
7. hang	....	8. have	had	9. make	....
10. put	....	11. see	....	12. set	....
13. sweep	....	14. take	....	15. win	won

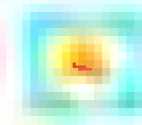
Midterm Tests





الامتحانات تشتمل على أسئلة Workbook والإدارات السابقة

Test 5



Listening (12 Marks)

1 (6 marks)

نص الاستماع بعد الاختبارات

1 log / frog	2 drink / drank	3 chess / kiss

2 (6 marks)

نص الاستماع بعد الاختبارات — سوهاج - إدارة المراغة 2015

Ali : Wake up, Ramy.
Ramy : What ❶ .... is it, Ali?
Ali : It's ❷ .... o'clock. It's time for breakfast.
Ramy : What's ❸ .... breakfast?
Ali : We are having beans and ❹ ....

Reading (14 Marks)

3 (5 marks)

					Answer
1	washed	cleaned	cook	listened	....
2	juice	spaghetti	bread	fish	....
3	laugh	climb	watch	smiled	....
4	you	they	Ali	she	....
5	story	eat	use	say	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Let's .... juice. WB

a. eat b. drink c. slide d. cry

2- He went on a .. .. WB

a. kite b. flower c. ride d. prize

3- She .... at jokes yesterday.

a. laugh b. laughs c. laughed d. laughing

4- He .... play cards yesterday. البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة 2015

a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. isn't

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2015

Yesterday was a holiday. Dina went to the amusement park with her friends. She saw a show. She went on a ride. She ate cotton candy. She drank orange juice. She didn't have lunch there. It was a nice holiday. She went back home at five o'clock.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Dina drank apple juice.		
2	She had lunch at the amusement park.		
3	She went to the amusement park with her family.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Dina eat?

....

5- When did Dina go back home?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences (4 marks)

1- have - I - money - don't - enough. WB

....

2- Here - are - you. WB

....

3- do - kind - **What** - juice - of - want - you? **2014** القاهرة - إدارة الساحل

....

4- are - **Whose** - these - keys?

....

7 [illegible] (4 marks)

2014 الدقهلية - إدارة شربين

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 [illegible] (4 marks)

• **Use the following guiding words:**

sweep - help - do - make

2016 الجيزة - إدارة الوراق

....

....

....

....

9 [illegible] (2 marks)

1- did nabila s brother see a show

....

2- ali can t go to cairo **2014** أسيوط - إدارة ديروط

....

Test 6

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 (6 marks)

نص الاستماع بعد الاختبارات

1	floor	door
2	strong	wrong
3	fly	cry

2 (6 marks)

نص الاستماع بعد الاختبارات — سوهاج - إدارة المراغة 2015

Teacher : Did you help your mother at home?
Pupil : Yes, I did.
Teacher : ❶ .... did you do?
Pupil : I hung up the clothes and ❷ .... the floor.
Teacher : Did you ❸ .... the laundry?
Pupil : No, I ❹ ....

Reading (14 Marks)

3 (5 marks)

الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق 2015

					Answer
1	pots	dogs	forks	pans	....
2	holiday	seventy	seven	six	....
3	cake	camp	pizza	meat	....
4	Friday	Monday	May	Tuesday	....
5	Where	How	were	When	....

4 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box: (4 marks)

climbed - called - pots - brushed - listened

On Monday, Amany watered the plants. She ❶ .... her hair. Then she ❷ .... a friend. On Tuesday, she ❸ .... to music. Then she washed the ❹ .... and pans.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2014

Ahmed was busy on Saturday. In the morning, he had his breakfast. He ate eggs and beans. He went to the park with his friend Shady. Shady and Ahmed played cards. In the afternoon, they drank juice and took pictures.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Ahmed was busy on Friday.		
2	Ahmed didn't eat eggs or beans.		
3	Ahmed and Shady played cards.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Ahmed have in the morning?

....

5- Where did Ahmed and Shady go?

....

C Writing (14 marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences (4 marks)

1- have - did - Sarah - **Where** - breakfast?

....

2- get - **Let's** - juice - some.

....

3- stories - Did - to - listen - you? 2014 سوهاج - إدارة طما

....

4- breakfast - time - It's - for.

....

7 (4 marks)

2015 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 (4 marks)

• Use the following guiding words:

help - sweep - laundry - bed

2016 كفر الشيخ - إدارة فوه

....

....

....

....

9 (2 marks)

1- ahmed and mahmoud went to alexandria

....

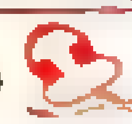
2- what did omar roast on sunday

....

Test 7

A Listening (12 marks)

1 Listen and circle: **(6 marks)**


نص الاستماع بعد الاختبارات

1	feed / need
2	pot / pet
3	take / make

2 Listen and complete: **(6 marks)**


نص الاستماع بعد الاختبارات

Ahmed : Did you clean the tent?
Nagwa : Yes, I ❶ ……………………… .
Ahmed : Did you ❷ ……………………… the pots and pans?
Nagwa : No, I didn't. I ❸ ……………………… breakfast.
Ahmed : Did you play ❹ ……………………… ?
Nagwa : Yes, I did.

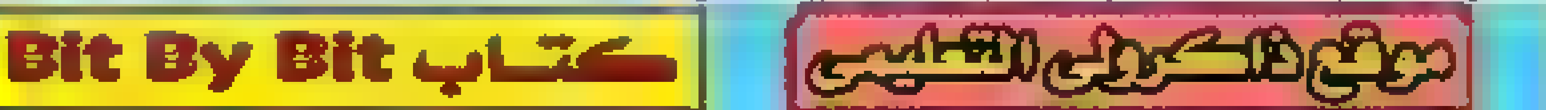
B Reading (14 marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one **(5 marks)**

القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2015

Answer

1	chair	table	desk	joke	………………
2	red	eight	green	black	………………
3	cotton candy	juice	tea	milk	………………
4	bus	sister	taxi	bicycle	………………
5	rice	cheese	fish	mother	………………



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- He .... tickets. WB
a. ate b. drank c. wrote d. bought

2- Did your sister .... lunch?
a. cooking b. cooks c. cook d. cooked

3- She won a .... WB
a. smile b. prize c. plane d. tree

4- What did Hossam .... ?
a. does b. do c. did d. doing

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

البحيرة - إدارة التحرير 2015

My name is Mona. I'm in primary five. I get up at seven o'clock. It's time for breakfast. I have breakfast at home. I have eggs and beans. They're my favourite food. I go to school by bike. I like my school very much.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Mona is in primary six.		
2	She doesn't have breakfast at home.		
3	She goes to school by bike.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What does Mona have in the morning?

....

5- When does Mona get up?

....

C. Writing (14 marks)

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- for - beans - We're - breakfast - having. 2015 الوادى الجديد - إدارة الداخلة

....

2- enough - you - money - Do - have?

....

3- floor - Did - sweep - you - the?

....

4- cards - I - played - yesterday.

....

7 (4 marks)

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

8 (4 marks)

- **Use the following guiding words:**

ticket - ride - cotton candy - take

البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة 2014

....

....

....

....

9 (2 marks)

1- did fatma feed the cat on monday الإسماعيلية - إدارة الاسماعيلية 2014

....

2- on wednesday, ali goes to the park المنيا - إدارة المنيا 2015

....

Listening materials

Midterm Tests



Test 5

1- Listen and circle:

1- log 2- drank 3- kiss

2- Listen and complete:

Ali : Wake up, Ramy.

Ramy : What **time** is it, Ali?

Ali : It's **seven** o'clock. It is time for breakfast.

Ramy : What's **for** breakfast?

Ali : We are having beans and **eggs**.

Test 6

1- Listen and circle:

1- floor 2- wrong 3- fly

2- Listen and complete:

Teacher : Did you help your mother at home?

Pupil : Yes, I did.

Teacher : **What** did you do?

Pupil : I hung up the clothes and **swept** the floor.

Teacher : Did you **do** the laundry?

Pupil : No, I **didn't**.

Test 7

1- Listen and circle:

1- feed 2- pot 3- make

2- Listen and complete:

Ahmed : Did you clean the tent?

Nagwa : Yes, I **did**.

Ahmed : Did you **wash** the pots and pans?

Nagwa : No, I didn't. I **cooked** breakfast.

Ahmed : Did you play **cards**?

Nagwa : Yes, I did.

Workbook كتاب التدريبات
يوجد بآخر الكتاب



Unit 4

In Town

في المدينـــة

كتاب التدريبات Workbook يوجد
فى جزء خاص آخر الكتاب

Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time Lesson 1 - SB: P.15 / WB.P. 13

- ask about location • السؤال عن المكان
- give directions • إعطاء الاتجاهات
- request clarification • طلب توضيح
- express gratitude • التعبير عن الامتنان
- describe future activities • وصف أنشطة مستقبلية
- identify speakers in a conversation • التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة

Word Time Lesson 2 - SB: P.16 / WB.P. 14

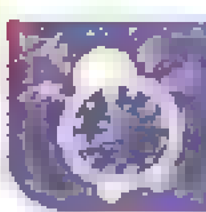
- write and read sentences • كتابة وقراءة جمل
- use words that come together • استخدام كلمات تأتى معا
- vocabulary: actions • مفردات الأنشطة

Practice Time Lesson 3 - [illegible] / WB.P. 15

- use the future with (going to) (affirmative and negative statements)
- استخدام زمن المستقبل باستخدام (going to + inf) فى الاثبات والنفى

Phonics Time Lesson 4 - [illegible] / WB.P. 15

- identify sound of final (- [illegible]
- التعرف على صوت [illegible] فى نهاية الكلمات
- associate sound of letters with written form
- ربط أصوات الحروف بصيغة كتابتها



Conversation Time وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 15
WB Page: 13



Vocabulary المفردات

Places أماكن

museum	متحف	block	عمارة سكنية
town	مدينة		

[illegible]

far	بعيد	near	قريب
turn right	استدر يمينًا	turn left	استدر يسارًا
on the right	على اليمين	on the left	على اليسار
map	خريطة	direction	اتجاه

Expressions تعبيرات

Excuse me.	معذرة / لو سمحت .	Have fun!	أتمنى لك الاستمتاع!
Not really!	ليس بعيد جدًا!	Ouch!	آه (عند الشعور بألم)!
You're welcome.	على الرحب/العفو .	Watch out!	احترس!

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs	أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
turn	يستدير	turned	say	يقول	said
thank	يشكر	thanked	go	يذهب	went
walk	يمشي	walked	get to	يصل إلى	got to

Unit

look for	يبحث عن	looked for	think	يعتقد	thought
welcome	يرحب بـ	welcomed			

Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم

- Excuse me. I'm looking for the museum. Is it far?
  لو سمحت . أنا أبحث عن المتحف . هل هو بعيد؟
- Not really! ليس بعيداً جدًا!
- Walk two blocks. Turn right. It's on the left.
  تخطى عمارتين . ثم استدر يمينًا. إنه على اليسار.
- Did you say turn right or turn left? هل قلت استديرى يمينًا أم يسارًا؟
- Turn right. It's on the left. استديرى يمينًا. إنه على اليسار.
- Thank you very much. شكرا جزيلاً.
- You're welcome. Have fun! على الرحب والسعة. أتمنى لك وقتا ممتعاً.



A. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

B. Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين:

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner. تبادل الأدوار مع زميلك:

Tapescript نص الاستماع



1 **Woman** : Excuse me. I'm looking for the museum. Is it far?

Man : Not really!







2 Man : Walk two blocks. Turn right. It's on the left.



3 Woman : Did you say turn right or turn left?

Man : Turn right. It's on the left.

4 Woman : Thank you very much.

Man : You're welcome. Have fun!

Review. Listen and repeat. راجع. استمع وردد:



: Watch out!

: Ouch!

: Are you okay?

: I think so. But look at the groceries!

Unit



Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية



look for يبحث عن   **look at** ينظر إلى

- I'm looking for my pen. أنا أبحث عن قلمي الجاف.
- He is looking at his watch. هو ينظر إلى ساعته.



on the left على اليسار   **on the right** على اليمين

- The bank is on the left. البنك على اليسار.
- The museum is on the right. المتحف على اليمين.



Language Functions وظائف لغوية

١- للفت انتباه شخص بطريقة مهذبة أو قبل السؤال تستخدم:

- Excuse me. معذرةً/ لو سمحت.
- Excuse me. Where is the library? معذرةً./ أين المكتبة؟

٢- الشكر والرد عليه:

- Thank you very much. شكرًا جزيلًا.
- You're welcome. عفوًا/ على الرحب والسعة.

Exercises on Lesson 1





1 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار   القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2014

Ali : Excuse me. I'm looking for the museum. Is it ❶ .... ?
Tamer : Not really! Walk two ❷ .... .Turn right. It's on the left.
Ali : Did you say ❸ .... right or turn left?
Tamer : Turn right. It's ❹ .... the left.
Ali : Thank you very much.
Tamer : You are welcome. Have fun!

2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	museum	school	town	left	....
2	right	look	walk	say	....
3	woman	man	fun	boy	....
4	on	at	for	far	....
5	turned	walked	watch	said	....

3 Choose the correct answer from a,b c or d:

1- .... me. Where can I find the museum? 2014 البحيرة - إدارة إيتاى البارود

a. Excuse b. Need c. Walk d. Thank

2- Samira can't find her bag, so she is looking .... it.

a. of b. for c. on d. at

3- Ashraf used the .... to know how to get to the museum.

a. street b. block c. direction d. map

4- The bank is .... the right.

a. in b. on c. at d. of

5- My school isn't near my house. It's .... from it.

a. next to b. above c. far d. fun

4 Read the passage and answer the question.

2015 كفر الشيخ - إدارة بيلا

Mona went to Cairo yesterday. She didn't know the way to the Egyptian Museum. She asked a policeman about the way. It was near Tahrir Square ميدان التحرير. She went to the museum on foot. It was easy to go there. She was happy and enjoyed her time.

A- **Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :**

		True	False
1	Mona asked a doctor about the way.		
2	The Egyptian Museum is near Tahrir Square.		
3	The policeman knew the way to the museum.		

Unit

B- **Answer the following questions:**

4- Is the Egyptian Museum far from Tahrir Square?

....

5- When did Mona go to Cairo?

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- for - looking - I'm - museum - the. (2015) المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء

....

2- you - Did - say - right - turn?

....

3- Where - the - is - cinema?

....

4- you - Thank - much - very.

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences.

• **Use the following guiding words:**

map - museum - man - blocks

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- where s ali (2015) المنوفية - إدارة أشمون

....

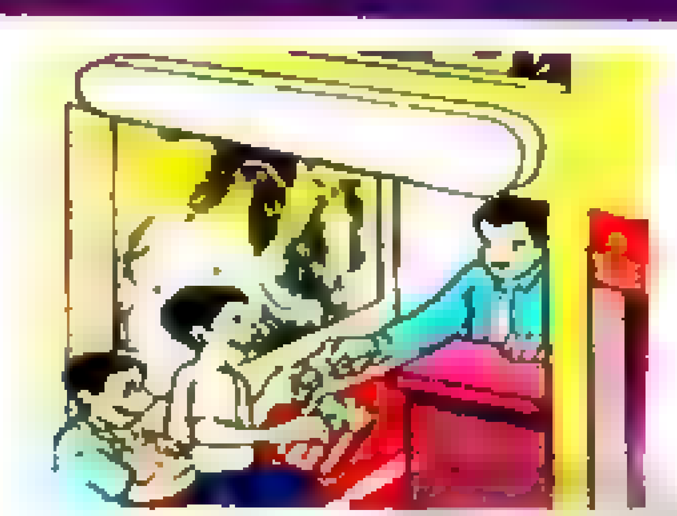
2- i want to go to the egyptian museum

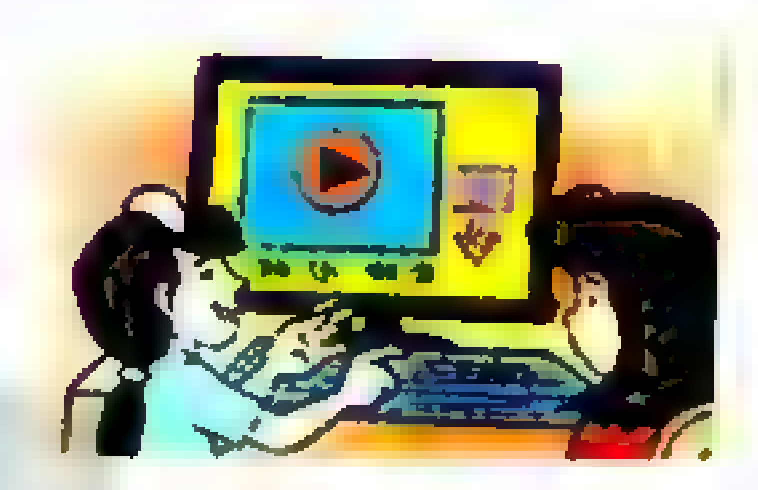
....

Word Time وقت الكلمات

SB Page: 16
WB Page: 14

Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتي مع أسماء


see a film يشاهد فيلم


download a video يقوم بتحميل فيديو

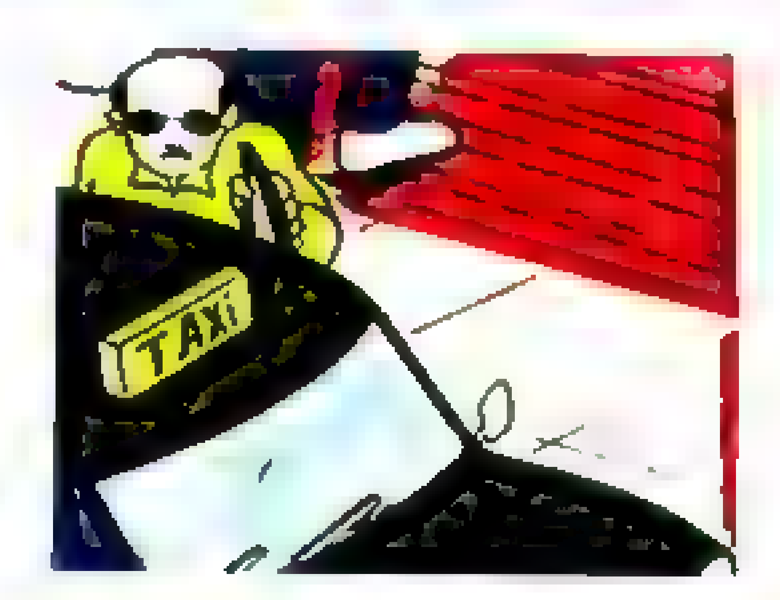

ride the bus يركب الأتوبيس


visit a friend يزور صديق


buy an ice cream يشترى أيس كريم


send an email يرسل بريد الكترونى


get a haircut يقص شعره



take a taxi يأخذ/ يستقل تاكسى



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs	أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
visit	يزور	visited	take	يأخذ	took
download	يُحمِّل (بيانات – فيديو)	downloaded	ride	يركب	rode
			buy	يشترى	bought
			send	يرسل	sent
			get	يحصل على	got
			see	يرى	saw

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



١- للاقتراح:

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Let's get some popcorn. هيا نحضر بعض من الفيشار.
- Okay. Sounds good. للموافقة: حسنًا . يبدو جيدًا.
- I don't want popcorn. للرفض: لا أريد فيشار.



٢- ما يقال عند الحلاق

- How do you like your hair? كيف تحب أن يكون شعرك؟
- I like it very short. أحبه (الشَّعر) قصيرًا جدًا.



A. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

B. Point and say the words. أشر وقل الكلمات:

WORD TIME

استمع الى نص الاستماع وردد الكلمات:

1. see a film
2. download a video
3. ride the bus
4. visit a friend
5. buy an ice cream
6. send an email
7. get a haircut
8. take a taxi



C. Listen and point. استمع وأشر :

• استمع وأشر إلى الكلمات الآتية في الصورة السابقة .

- Get a haircut.
- Take a taxi.
- Send an email.
- Ride the bus.
- See a film.
- Visit a friend.
- Download a video.
- Buy an ice cream.

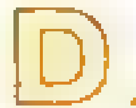


• استمع إلى الحوارات الآتية وأشر إلى المتحدثين في الصورة السابقة .

1 A : I bought the tickets.
B : Let's get some popcorn.
A : Okay. Sounds good.

2 A : How do you like your hair, sir?
B : I like it very short.
A : Okay.

3 A : Excuse me. Is this your shoe?
B : Yes, it is! Thanks so much.
A : You're welcome.



Answer

1- children at cinema door أطفال أمام باب السينما
2- the hairdresser and man at the barber's shop
الحلاق ورجل في محل الحلاقة
3- woman and girl on pavement near the cinema
امرأة وبنت على الرصيف بالقرب من السينما

D. Write the words. اكتب الكلمات :

اكتب الكلمات في القاموس الخاص في نهاية الكتاب المدرسي صفحات (٣٢ - ٣٤).

Exercises on Lesson 2




1 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	car	bus	train	haircut	....
2	bought	went	visit	rode	....
3	busy	ticket	happy	hungry	....
4	buy	send	saw	get	....
5	download	woman	man	children	....

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box.

film - take - haircut - send - ride

In town, everyone is busy. Two men are going to ❶ .... a taxi. A man is getting a ❷ .... Some boys are going to see a ❸ .... A child is going to ❹ .... an email.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I'll .... a video. **2015** الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة

a. read b. visit c. ride d. download

2- I am going to .... an email. **2015** المنوفية - إدارة أشمون

a. send b. eat c. drink d. play

3- Sherif always .... ice cream with chocolate.

a. sends b. buys c. rides d. downloads

4- People can see a .... at the cinema.

a. haircut b. film c. letter d. ride

5- I .... a taxi to school every day.

a. buy b. visit c. download d. take

Unit

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- your - you - How - like - hair - do?

....

2- will - She - a haircut - get.

....

3- download - Did - a video - you? القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2014

....

4- visited - Walid - friend - his - yesterday.

....

5 Look and write a question and its answer:





1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences

• Use the following guiding words:

send - taxi - haircut - buy



....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- i m going to visit my friend emad

....

2- what s hany going to do

....





Practice Time وقت التدريب

SB Page: 17
WB Page: 15



Grammar قواعد لغوية

Future with (going to + inf. مصدر الفعل)

زمن المستقبل البسيط مع going to

- تستخدم (going to + inf. ....) للتعبير عن المستقبل.
- تستخدم أيضا للتحدث عن خطط مستقبلية أو قرارات مسبقة أو نية لعمل شيء.

Form: التكوين

Affirmative في حالة الإثبات

I	→ am (='m)	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل.
He - She - It - اسم مفرد	→ is (='s)	
We - They - You - اسم جمع	→ are (='re)	

- I'm going to visit my friend.
- He's going to get a haircut.
- They are going to take a taxi.

Negative في حالة النفي

I	→ am	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He - She - It - اسم مفرد	→ is + not	
We - They - You - اسم جمع	→ are	

- I'm not going to see a film.
- He's not going to get a haircut.
- They aren't going to take a taxi.

Unit

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

لاحظ استخدام الكلمات الآتية مع المستقبل:

in the future فى المستقبل – next (week - month - year) القادم – tomorrow غدًا

لاحظ الإختصارات الآتية

Affirmative فى حالة الإثبات

- I am = I'm
- They are = They're
- He is = He's
- We are = We're
- She is = she's
- You are = You're

Negative فى حالة النفى

- She is not = She isn't
- They are not = They aren't
- We are not = We aren't
- You are not = You aren't

لكن لا يمكن اختصار I am not.

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

I'm She's We're	going to ride the bus.
I'm not She isn't We aren't	going to take a taxi.

Listen and repeat.Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد. ثم تدرب مع زميلك:

– كون جملاً باستخدام المستقبل بـ "going to" فى الاثبات والنفى بعد النظر إلى الصور.




1 She's going to send an email.

She isn't going to get a haircut.

He/get a haircut
send an email

2 He's going to get a haircut.

He isn't going to send an email.



3 We're going to see a film.

We aren't going to download a video.

They / download a video
see a film



4 They're going to download a video.

They aren't going to see a film.

You/buy an ice cream
visit a friend

5 You're going to buy an ice cream.

You aren't going to visit a friend.



6 I'm going to visit a friend.

I'm not going to buy an ice cream.

C. Look at page 16. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

انظر إلى صفحة 16 بالكتاب المدرسي . أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميلك .

S1 : (Pointing to the woman at the postbox):

يشير التلميذ الأول إلى السيدة بجوار صندوق البريد ويقول:

She is going to mail a letter.

إنها سترسل خطابًا .

S2 : She isn't going to download a video.

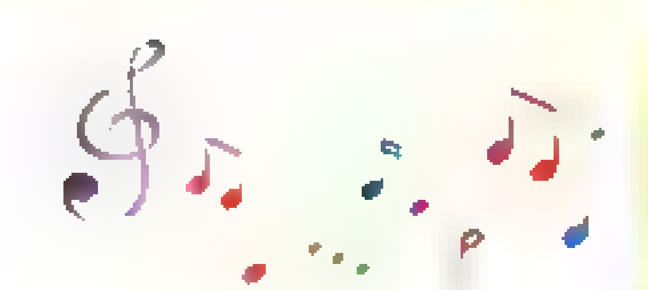
ويرد التلميذ الثاني ويقول: إنها لن تقوم بتحميل فيديو .

D Listen and chant. استمع وغن:

- يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية (I'm Going to Download a Video) ويرددونها: (SB Page 30)

The SONG

I'm Going to Download a Video



I'm going to download a video.
He's going to download a video.
We're going to download a video.
We aren't going to send an email.



He's going to visit a friend.
She's going to visit a friend.
They're going to visit a friend.
They aren't going to ride the bus.



I'm going to buy an ice cream
He's going to buy an ice cream.
We're going to buy an ice cream
We aren't going to see a film.



Exercises on Lesson 3





1 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	buy	film	take	visit	....
2	taxi	they	you	she	....
3	email	friend	man	child	....
4	bought	sent	visit	took	....
5	download	busy	see	ride	....

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box

going - is - to - are - see

My brother and I are at home. I'm ❶ .... to send an email. My brother is going ❷ .... download a video. Then, he's going to ❸ .... a film. In the evening, we ❹ .... going to visit our friend.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- I'm going to .... an ice cream. 2014 القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس

a. buy b. buying c. bought d. buys

2- What .... you going to do?

a. is b. am c. are d. was

3- She .... going to have her lunch.

a. 's b. 're c. 've d. 'd

4- He is going to .... an email. 2015 المنيا - إدارة ملوى

a. sent b. send c. sends d. sending

5- I .... going to visit my friend.

a. not b. is c. am d. aren't



4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

بنى سويف - إدارة بنى سويف 2015

I have a lot of friends, they are busy today. My friend Hossam is going to download a video. My friend Ahmed is going to send an email. Huda and Gamal are going to buy ice cream. My brother Hany is going to see a film.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Hossam is going to send an email.		
2	Gamal and Hoda are going to buy ice cream.		
3	Hany isn't going to see a film.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What's Ahmed going to do?

....

5- Who is going to download a video?

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- going to - Are - buy - you - a book? القاهرة - إدارة مصر الجديدة 2015

....

2- friend - I'm - to - visit - going - a. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2015

....

3- aren't - an email - They - send - going to.

....

4- get - is - a haircut - Who - going to?

....

5- going to - Hoda - a - take - bus - is.

....

6- she - to - see - Is - going - a film?

....

6 Look [illegible] question and its answer





1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

7 Look and write a paragraph of (FOUR 4) sentences

- **Use the following guiding words:**

video - film - buy - ride

البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة 2014



....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following :

1- we aren t going to send emails next saturday

....

2- are you going to ride the bus kareem

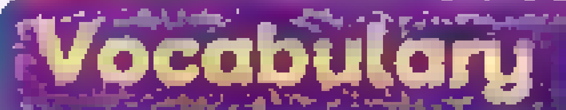
....

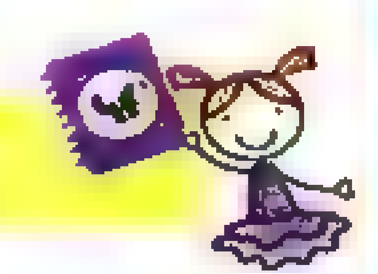
Unit

Phonics Time

وقت الصوتيات

SB Page: 18
WB Page: 16



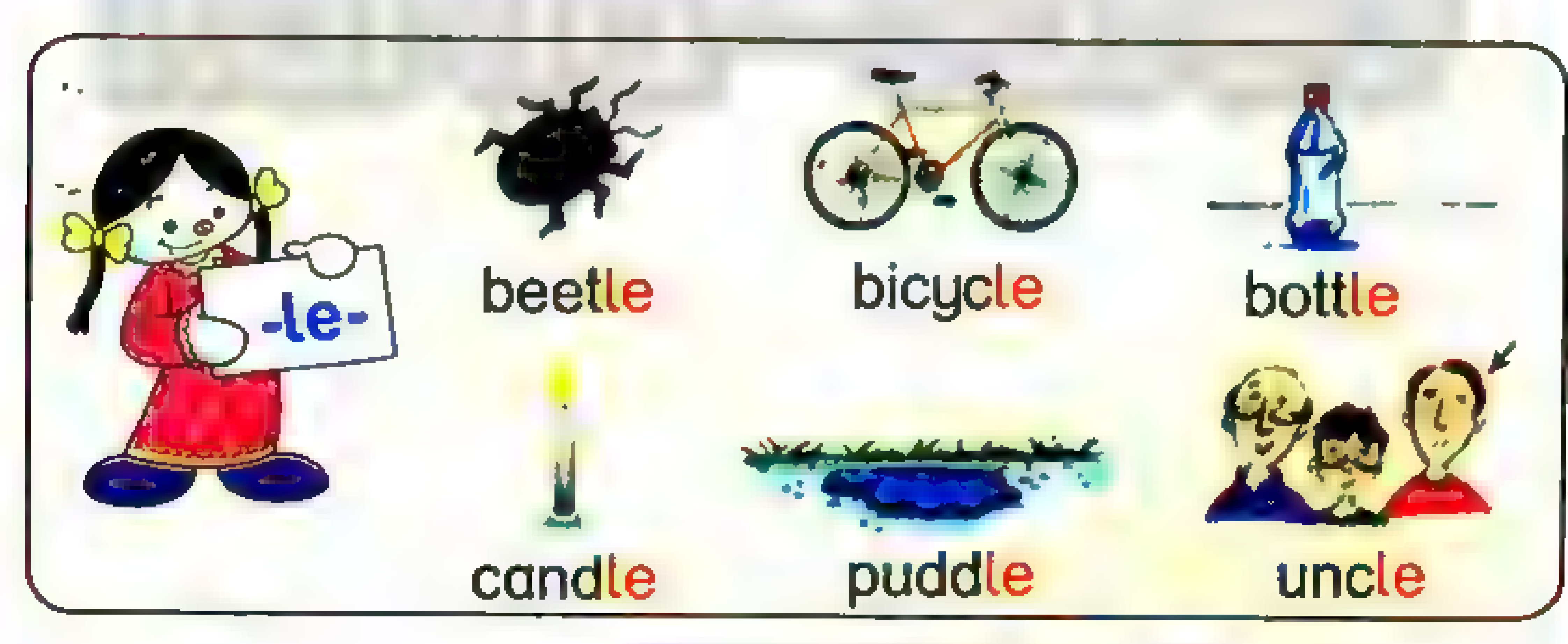


Vocabulary المفردات

The (le) words كلمات تنتهى بـ (le)

beetle	خنفساء	bicycle	دراجة
candle	شمعة	bottle	زجاجة
uncle	عم / خال	puddle	بركة مياة
middle	وسط	Nile	نهر النيل
battle	معركة	saddle	سرج الحصان
noodle	شعرية	little	كمية قليلة / صغير السن
riddle	لغز / فزورة	turtle	سلحفاء مائية
ripple	موجة صغيرة	cattle	ماشية

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :



- لاحظ الحرفين le فى نهاية هذه الكلمات تنطق /l/ .

Listen and circle. استمع وضع دائرة :

الاستماع آخر الوحدة

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Nile	saddle	bottle	bicycle	puddle
middle	battle	little	noodle	riddle
uncle	beetle	candle	turtle	cattle

Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.



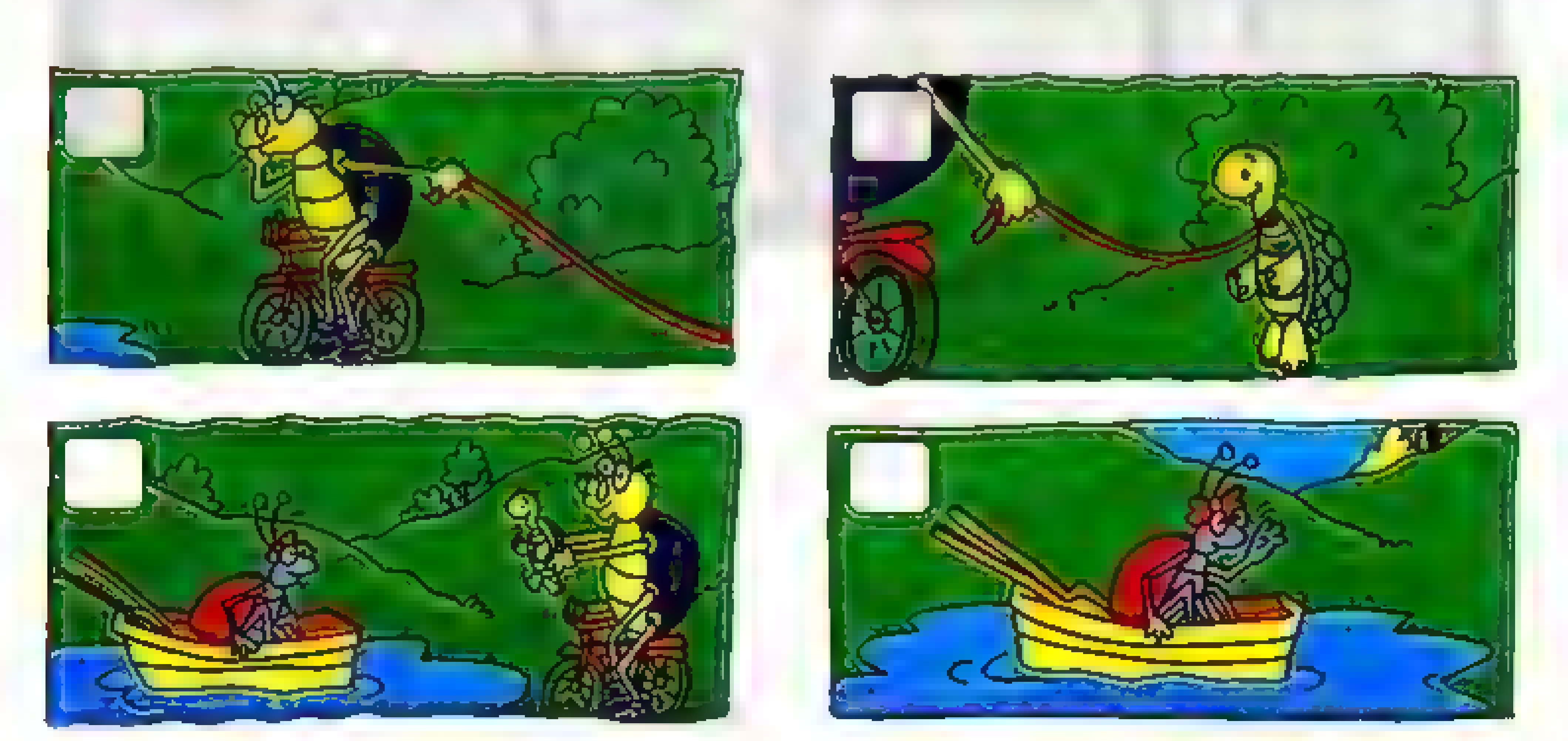
اقرأ الجُمل واكتب الرقم على الصورة المناسبة ثم استمع . الإجابة آخر الوحدة

1- The beetle is in the middle of a puddle.

2- Her uncle is on a bicycle.

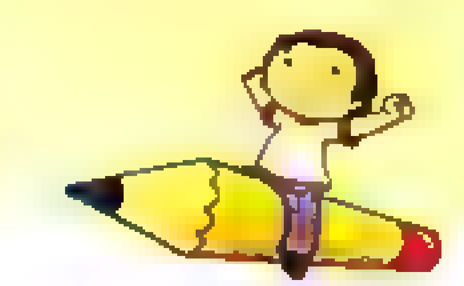
3- He has a little turtle.

4- It's a turtle for the beetle in the middle of the puddle.



Exercises on Lesson 4





1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	riddle / puddle	2	beetle / little	3	cattle / battle

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Amany : What are you going to do tomorrow?

Randa : I'm going to ❶ .... a ticket .

Amany : Are you going to see a ❷ ....?

Randa : Yes, and you can come ❸ .... me.

Amany : ❹ .... are you going to go there?

Randa : At six o'clock in the evening.

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

Answer

1	bicycle	taxi	beetle	bus	....
2	noodle	candle	spaghetti	rice	....
3	bottle	glass	turtle	dish	....
4	uncle	father	cattle	mother	....
5	little	send	buy	call	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

bottle - welcomes - visits - noodles - battle

Mr. Reda has one brother. He lives in a small village. He ❶............. him on Fridays. Reda ❷ .... his brother. Reda brings him a plate of ❸ .... to eat. He also brings him a ❹ .... of milk. The two brothers have a nice time every Friday.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I saw a beetle in the .... of the puddle.

a. far	b. middle	c. next	d. between

2- My grandfather's horse has a white ....

a. cattle	b. ripple	c. saddle	d. candle

3- I help my .... brother in his homework.

a. new	b. far	c. heavy	d. little

4- My father's brother is my ....

a. grandfather	b. uncle	c. cousin	d. brother

5- I'm thirsty. I want a .... of water.

a. beetle	b. lake	c. bottle	d. noodle

6- There's a boat in the middle of the ....

a. bottle	b. bicycle	c. Nile	d. beetle

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- have - What - you - are - going - to? كفر الشيخ - إدارة فوة 2015

....

2- uncle - her - Ola's - bicycle - gave - a.

....

3- going - buy - What's - he - to?

....

4- on - saw - I - the bottle - a beetle.

....

5- in - the lake - he - Did - jump?

....

7 Look and write the question and its answer.





1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Punctuate the following sentences.

1- what s ali doing at home القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2015

....

2- ahmed met fatma and sama yesterday

....

Remember

Vocabulary المفردات



Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتى مع أسماء

see a film	يشاهد فيلم	download a video	يقوم بتحميل فيديو
ride the bus	يركب أتوبيس	visit a friend	يزور صديق
buy an ice cream	يشترى آيس كريم	send an email	يرسل بريد الكترونى
get a haircut	يقص شعره	take a taxi	يأخذ تاكسى

Places أماكن

museum	متحف	block	عمارة سكنية
town	مدينة		

Giving directions

map	خريطة	turn left	استدر يساراً
far	بعيد	turn right	استدر يميناً
near	قريب	direction	اتجاه

the (le) words كلمات تنتهى بـ (le)

beetle	خنفساء	bicycle	دراجة
candle	شمعة	bottle	زجاجة
uncle	عم / خال	puddle	بركة مياه
middle	وسط	Nile	النيل
battle	معركة	saddle	سرج الحصان
noodle	شعرية	little	كمية قليلة / صغير السن
riddle	لغز / فزورة	turtle	سلحفاء مائيه
ripple	موجة صغيرة	cattle	ماشية

Unit

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
ask	يسأل	asked	say	يقول	said
turn	يستدير	turned	get to	يصل إلى	got to
look for	يبحث عن	looked for	ride	يركب	rode
need	يحتاج	needed	buy	يشترى	bought
visit	يزور	visited	send	يرسل	sent
download	يُحمل (بيانات – فيديو)	downloaded	get	يحصل على	got

Grammar قواعد لغوية



Future with (going to + inf. مصدر الفعل)

– نستخدم (going to + inf. ....) للتحدث عن خطط مستقبلية أو قرارات مسبقة أو نية لعمل شيء.

Form التكوين

Affirmative فى حالة الإثبات

I → am (='m)
He - She - It - اسم مفرد → is (='s)
We - They - You - اسم جمع → are (='re)
} + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I'm going to visit my friend.
- He's going to get a haircut.

Negative فى حالة النفى

I → am
He - She - It - اسم مفرد → is + not
We - They - You - اسم جمع → are
} + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I'm not going to see a film.
- We aren't going to take a taxi.

Remember

تسميع الكلمات

block	....	turn right	....
look for	....	ride the bus	....
send an email	....	download a video	....
cattle	....	lake	....
saddle	....	riddle	....
puddle	....	uncle	....

عربي ← إنجليزي

خريطة	....	متحف	....
تذكرة	....	مدينة	....
يأخذ تاكسى	....	يشاهد فيلم	....
يقص شعره	....	يشترى آيس كريم	....
يزور صديق	....	شمعة	....
سلحفاة	....	شعرية	....
معركة	....	خنفساء	....

Unit

Writing skills مهارات الكتابة — Unit 4

السؤال السابع فى ورقة الامتحان:

7 Look and write a question and its answer — انظر واكتب السؤال الاجابة:

1.



- What are they going to do?
  They are going to see a film.

2.



- What does the woman want ?
  She wants to go to the museum.

3.



- What's the girl doing?
  She's buying an ice cream.

4.



- What's this?
  It's a turtle.

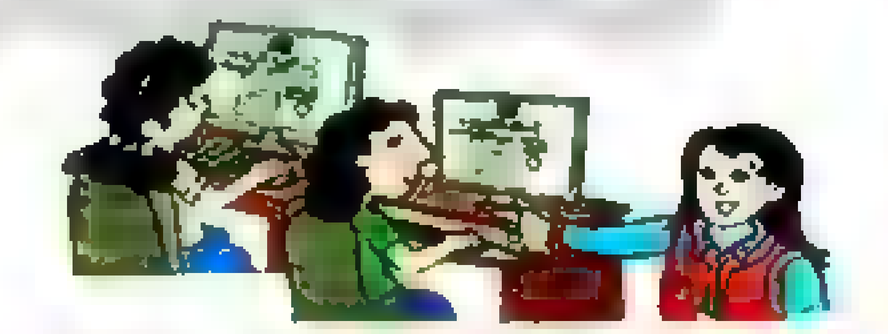
السؤال الثامن فى ورقة الامتحان:

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences

انظر واكتب فقرة انشائية من أربعة جمل:

- **Use the following guiding words:**

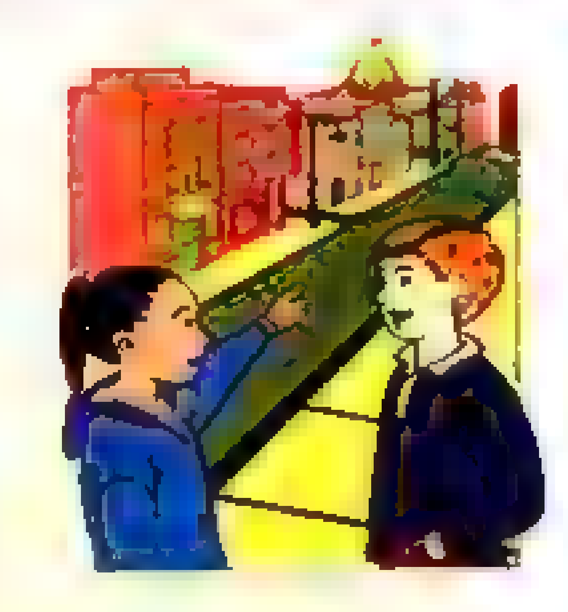
girls - download a video - see a film - computers



They are girls. They are going to download a video. They aren't going to see a film. They like computers.

- **Use the following guiding words:**

looking - museum - far - thank



The boy is looking for the museum. The girl helps him. The museum isn't far. The boy thanks the girl.



Test 8



Unit Four

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle. (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	candle / bicycle
2	rent / sent
3	bottle / battle

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Man : Excuse me, I'm looking for the museum.
Policeman : ❶ .... two blocks. It's on the left.
Man : ❷ .... you say turn right or turn left?
Policeman : Turn right. It's ❸ .... the left.
Man : Is it ❹ .... ?
Policeman : Not really.
Man : Thank you very much.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	video	taxi	bus	plane	....
2	gave	made	candle	swam	....
3	little	girl	boy	woman	....
4	bought	turn	visit	jump	....
5	horse	cattle	turtle	noodle	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **(4 marks)**

1- Walk two blocks. It's on the ....

a. table b. shelf c. write d. right

2- We're ... . to visit our friends next Friday.

الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2014

a. go b. going c. goes d. went

3- .... he going to buy an ice cream?

a. Are b. Is c. Am d. Did

4- She is going to .... the bus.

a. take b. visit c. swim d. gave

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: **(5 marks)**

A lot of people don't know many places in big towns. They have to ask someone about the place they want. Everyone welcomes and helps them. They sometimes use maps to show them the directions. When they know the place , they thank the man or woman who helps them.

A- **Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :**

		True	False
1	Maps show people the directions.		
2	People ask when they know the place.		
3	Big towns are easy to know.		

B- **Answer the following questions:**

4- What do people do when someone helps them?

....

5- What do people do when they don't know the place?

....

Test eight

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: **(4 marks)**

1- are - What - going - you - to read? القاهرة - إدارة البساتين 2015

....

2- going to - a video - download - He - isn't.

....

3- are - going - They - to - a film - see.

....

4- the - you - Are - for - looking - museum?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: **(4 marks)**

1. ....? 2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: **(4 marks)**

- **Use the following guiding words:**

going to - taxi - take - visit

مطروح - إدارة مطروح 2015

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: **(2 marks)**

1- there s a nice restaurant in cairo

....

2- is samy going to come on monday شمال سيناء - إدارة العريش 2015

....

Listening materials — Unit 4



Exercises - Lesson 1

1- Listen and complete:

Ali : Excuse me. I'm looking for the museum. Is it **far**?
Tamer : Not really! Walk two **blocks**. Turn right. It's on the left.
Ali : Did you say **turn** right or turn left?
Tamer : Turn right. It's **on** the left.
Ali : Thank you very much.
Tamer : You are welcome. Have fun!

Phonics Time

B) Listen and circle:

1- Nile , Nile 2- saddle, saddle
3- little, little 4- turtle, turtle
5- cattle, cattle

C) Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen:

2, 4, 3, 1

Exercises - Lesson 4

1- Listen and circle:

1- puddle 2- little 3- cattle

2- Listen and complete:

Amany : What are you going to do tomorrow?
Randa : I'm going to **buy** a ticket .
Amany : Are you going to see a **film**?
Randa : Yes, and you can come **with** me.
Amany : **When** are you going to go there?
Randa : At six o'clock in the evening.

Test - Unit 4

1- Listen and circle:

1- candle 2- sent 3- battle

2- Listen and complete:

Man : Excuse me, I'm looking for the museum.
Policeman : **Walk** two blocks. It's on the left.
Man : **Did** you say turn right or turn left?
Policeman : Turn right. It's **on** the left.
Man : Is it **far**?
Policeman : Not really.
Man : Thank you very much.



Unit 5 At the Food Festival

فى مهرجان الطعام

كتاب التدريبات Workbook
يوجد فى جزء خاص آخر الكتاب

Aims of Unit

Conversation Time — Lesson 1 - SB: P. 19 / WB: P. 17

- ask about & offer food
- السؤال عن الطعام و تقديمه
- ask questions about future meals
- السؤال عن وجبات المستقبل
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة

Word Time — Lesson 2 - SB: P. 20 / WB: P. 18

- write and read sentences
- كتابة و قراءة جُمل
- vocabulary about foods
- مفردات عن الطعام

Practice Time — Lesson 3 - SB: P. 21 / WB: P. 19

- Wh - questions with (What...)?
- السؤال بـ (ما / ماذا....؟)
- future with going to
- المستقبل البسيط باستخدام (going to ....)

Phonics Time — Lesson 4 - SB: P. 22 / WB: P. 20

- identify sound of final (- er)
- التعرف على صوت (- er) فى نهاية الكلمات
- associate sound of letters with written form
- ربط أصوات الحروف بصيغة كتابتها

Unit



SB Page: 19
WB Page: 17





Vocabulary المفردات

Foods and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات

fried rice	أرز محمر	popcorn	فيشار
apple juice	عصير تفاح	eggs	بيض
beans	فول	lemonade	عصير ليمون

Other words كلمات أخرى

festival	مهرجان	delicious	لذيذ
some	بعض		

Expressions تعبيرات

try some	جرب بعض منه	all right	حسنًا
come on	هيا (افعل)	I told you so.	أخبرتك بذلك .
Here you go.	تفضل	Thank you very much.	شكرًا جزيلاً .
just a little	مجرد كمية قليلة	You're welcome.	على الرحب والسعة / العفو .

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs	أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	**مضارع**	**Past**	**ماض**	**Present**	**مضارع**	**Past**	**ماض**
try	يجرب / يحاول	tried		eat	يأكل	ate	
want	يريد	wanted		tell	يخبر	told	
				drink	يشرب	drank	
				buy	يشترى	bought	
				come	يأتى	came	

Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم



- What are you eating? ماذا تأكل؟
- Fried rice. Try some. It's good. أرز محمر. جربي بعض منه . إنه جيد.
- Come on. Just a little. هيا تذوقي. و لو قليلاً.
- Oh, all right. But not too much. أوه. حسنا. ولكن ليست كمية كبيرة جداً.
- Here you go. هيا تذوقي هذا (تفضلي).
- Hey! It's delicious. أوه ! إنه لذيذ.
- I told you so. لقد أخبرتك بذلك.
- What did you buy? ماذا اشتريت؟
- I bought some apples. اشتريت بعض التفاح.
- Thank you very much. شكراً جزيلاً.
- You're welcome. العفو/ على الرحب والسعة

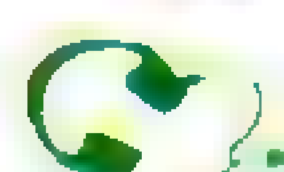
A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد:

Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين:

Role-play the conversation with a partner. تبادل المحادثة مع زميلك:

Tapescript نص الاستماع





1 **Girl** : What are you eating?

Boy : Fried rice. Try some. It's good.





Unit

2 **Girl** : No, thanks.
Boy : Come on. Just a little.



3 **Girl** : Oh, all right. But not too much.
Boy : Here you go.



4 **Girl** : Hey! It's delicious!
Boy : I told you so.



Review. Listen and repeat. راجع. استمع وردد:

 : What did you buy?

 : I bought some apples.
Do you want one?

 : Yes, please.
Thank you very much.

 : You're welcome.



Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية



1 Question in the Present Continuous السؤال فى زمن المضارع المستمر

(1) أداة استفهام + (2) am / is / are + (3) فاعل + (4) verb + ing?

- What are you doing?
- I'm eating.



2 Inf.

لإعطاء تعليمات لعمل أو طلب شىء نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل

- Try some rice.

ولإعطاء تعليمات بعدم فعل شىء نستخدم مصدر الفعل Don't + inf.

- Don't sleep late.

3 too much / too many

– نستخدم too much بمعنى أكثر من اللازم مع الكمية .

- There is too much rice on the plate.

– نستخدم too many بمعنى أكثر من اللازم مع العدد .

- There are too many children in the classroom.



4 Its / It's

• لاحظ : نستخدم (Its) بمعنى ملكه أو ملكها لغير العاقل ويأتى بعدها اسم .

ونستخدم It's بمعنى هذا / هذه تكون ويأتى بعدها صفة أو V+ing.

- Its colour is white.
- It's nice.
- It's eating.

Unit 5



Language Functions وظائف لغوية

١- السـؤال عن الطعام :

للسؤال عن الوجبات : What are you eating?

و للإجابة: Fried rice.

٢- تقديم الطعام :

- Try some. It's good.
- Come on. Just a little.

• لقبول العرض : - Oh, all right.

• لرفض العرض : - No, thanks.

Exercises on Lesson 1





1 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Ahmed : Hi, Ali.

Ali : Hi, Ahmed. What are you (1) ....?

Ahmed : I'm eating fried (2) ....

Ali : Is it (3) ....?

Ahmed : Yes, try (4) ....

Ali : Thanks a lot.

Ahmed : You're welcome.



2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	lemonade	juice	tea	apples	....
2	beans	popcorn	rice	come	....
3	drink	eat	festival	go	....
4	good	try	delicious	little	....
5	bought	tried	thank	drank	....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- What are you .... ? WB
a. eat b. ate c. eating d. eats

2- .... some fried rice. WB
a. Try b. Trying c. Tried d. Tries

3- Hey! .... delicious. WB
a. Its b. It's c. Is d. It

4- She will try fish, but not .... much.
a. to b. too c. two d. toe

5- Come on. .... a little.
a. Just b. Right c. Oh d. All

6- A: Can I have some apples? B: .... you are.
a. Hey b. Here c. Hear d. Her

7- I like to eat it. It's very .... الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2015
a. bad b. little c. old d. delicious

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- are - you - What - eating? الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين 2014

....

2- so - told - I - you.

....

3- she - eating - Is - beans?

....

4- go - Here - you.

....

Unit 5

5 Look and write a question and its answer





1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences

- **Use the following guiding words:**

food festival - rice - juice - delicious



....
....
....
....

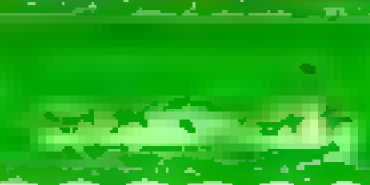
7 Punctuate the following

كفر الشيخ - إدارة بيلا 2015

1- thank you ahmed
....

2- what are hoda and nada eating
....

Word Time



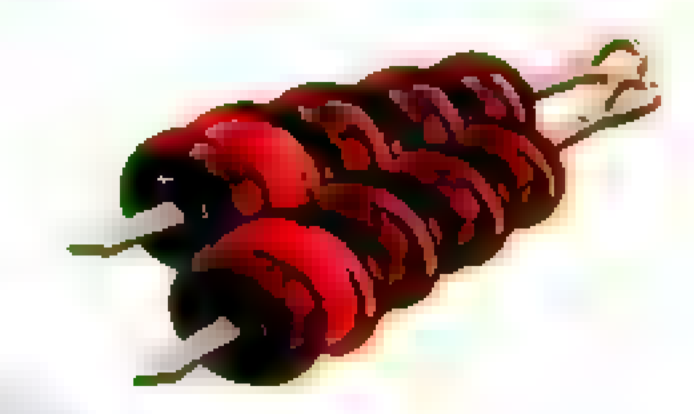
SE Page: 20
WB Page: 18

Foods and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات





green salad سلطة خضراء



kebab كباب



French fries بطاطس مقلية



beefburgers ساندوتشات برجر



spaghetti مكرونة اسباجتى



barbecued chicken دجاج مشوى



orange juice عصير برتقال



lemonade عصير ليمون

Unit 5

Other words كلمات أخرى

biscuit	بسكويت	mail a letter	يرسل خطاب
over there	هناك	say	يقول
candy	حلوى	See you later.	أراك لاحقًا.
iced tea	شاي مثلج		

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

- لعرض وتقديم الطعام:
- Would you like a biscuit? هل تريد بسكويت؟
- How about some candy? ما رأيك فى بعض الحلوى؟
- Yes, please. للموافقة نقول: - No, thanks. وللرفض نقول:

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 الأطعمة والمشروبات التى تعد والتى لا تعد:

1 - الأطعمة التى تعد

a French fry → French fries
a beefburger → beefburgers
a kebab → kebabs

2 - الأطعمة والمشروبات التى لا تعد

spaghetti - orange juice - lemonade

- لاحظ أن (green salad) يمكن أن تعد أو يمكن أن تعبر عن الطعام الذى لا يعد:

- Do you need any salad? (هنا لا تعد)
- I want a green salad. (هنا تعد)

2 للتعبير عما تريد فى المضارع البسيط نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + want + اسم
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + wants + اسم

- I want kebabs.
- They want green salad.
- She wants lemonade.

فى النفى نستخدم

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + don't want + اسم
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't want + اسم

- I don't want spaghetti.
- He doesn't want orange juice.

● At the Food Festival ●

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

Point and say the words. أشر وقل الكلمات:

WORD TIME

استمع الى نص الاستماع وردد الكلمات:

1. green salad
2. kebab
3. French fry / French fries
4. beefburger / beefburgers
5. spaghetti
6. barbecued chicken
7. orange juice
8. lemonade



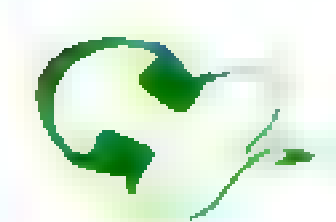
Unit 1

C **Listen and point.** استمع وأشر :

• استمع وأشر إلى الكلمات الآتية فى الصورة السابقة.

- Green salad.
- French fries.
- Spaghetti.
- Orange juice.
- Kebab.
- Beefburgers.
- Barbecued chicken.
- Lemonade.

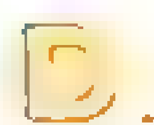
• استمع إلى الحوارات الآتية وأشر إلى المتحدثين فى الصورة السابقة.



1
A : Excuse me. I'm looking for the green salad.
B : They 're over there on the left.
A : Did you say on the left?
B : Yes, I did.
A : Thanks.

2
A : I'm going to mail a letter.
B : Okay. I'm going to buy some spaghetti.
A : Okay. See you later.
B : Bye.

3
A : Would you like a biscuit?
B : No, thanks.
A : How about some candy?
B : No, thank you.


Answer

1- (Girls at rice) بنات بجوار الأرز
2- (Mona and Kareem) منى وكريم
3- (Boy and girl at orange juice table) ولد وبنت بجوار منضدة عصير البرتقال

D **Write the words.** اكتب الكلمات:

اكتب الكلمات فى القاموس الخاص فى نهاية الكتاب المدرسى صفحات (٣٢ - ٣٤).

Exercises on Lesson 2




1 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	father	friend	brother	sister	....
2	spaghetti	beans	kebab	good	....
3	watch	want	wash	when	....
4	salad	girl	boy	man	....
5	kebab	lemonade	chicken	beefburger	....

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

fries - spaghetti - green - juice - barbecued

At the food festival, there are many kinds of food. There's some (1) .... salad, some spaghetti and there's some orange (2) .... You can see four beefburgers, some (3) .... chicken, many French (4) .... and a lot of kebabs.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- A: What's your favourite .... ? B: Kebab. 2015 الشرقية - إدارة مشتول السوق

a. subject b. game c. fruit d. food

2- There's so much good food at the food ....

a. festival b. school c. museum d. house

3- They .... want spaghetti.

a. doesn't b. don't c. isn't d. aren't

4- She is thirsty. She wants to drink some ...... 2015 الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق

a. juice b. popcorn c. pizza d. meat

5- He wants green .... and spaghetti for lunch.

a. rice b. juice c. salad d. kebab

6- I'm .... I need some food. 2015 بنى سويف - إدارة بنى سويف

a. hungry b. thirsty d. okay d. careful

Unit [illegible]

7- Ahmed likes .... chicken.

a. happy   b. barbecued   c. great   d sad

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct [illegible]

1- and - likes - He - kebab - spaghetti. — الشرقية - إدارة مشتول 2015

....

2- much - Thank - very - you. — المنيا - إدارة المنيا 2015

....

3- you - iced - want - Do - tea?

....

4- a biscuit - Would - like - you?

....

5 Look and write a question and its answer

1- ....?

....

2- ....?

....

6 [illegible]

- **Use the following guiding words:**

festival - beefburgers - fries - delicious

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following

1- what s eman's favourite food — أسيوط - إدارة أسيوط 2015

....

2- see you later kareem

....



Practice Time وقت التدريب



SB Page: 21
WB Page: 19

Grammar مواعد لغوية

Future Simple with (going to)

- للتعبير عن المستقبل نستخدم.(مصدر الفعل .going to + inf)
- للسؤال بـ "What..?" في زمن المستقبل مع (going to) نستخدم:

1	2		3	4	5
What +	am / is / are	+	الفاعل +	going to +	inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

- وفى الاجابة نستخدم:

1	2	3	4
I	→ am (='m)	+ going to +	inf. مصدر الفعل
He - She - It - اسم مفرد	→ is (='s)	+ going to +	inf. مصدر الفعل
You - They - We - اسم جمع	→ are (='re)	+ going to +	inf. مصدر الفعل

- What are you going to have? • ماذا سوف تتناول (تأكل)؟
I'm going to have kebabs. سوف أتناول الكباب.
- What is he going to have? • ماذا سوف يتناول؟
He is going to have some green salad. سوف يتناول سلطة خضراء.

Unit

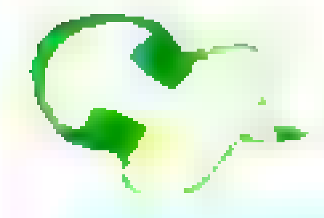
A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

What are you		I'm		a beefburger.
What's he	going to have?	He's	going to have	
What are they		They're		some spaghetti.

B Listen and repeat.Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك:

• يتبادل التلاميذ السؤال والإجابة بـ "What...?" عما سوف يتناوله الأشخاص فى الصورة.



1 What are you going to have?

I'm going to have some kebab.

You?
kebab



2 What's he going to have?

He's going to have some spaghetti.

he ?
spaghetti



3 What are they going to have?

They are going to have some

orange juice

they?
orange juice



4 What are you going to have?

We're going to have some French fries.



5 What's he going to have?

He's going to have some green salad.



6 What are you going to have?

I'm going to have some lemonade.



C **Look at page 20. Point to the picture and practise with a partner:**

انظر إلى الصفحة ٢٠ بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميلك.

S1 : (pointing to the girl heading to the beefburger table):

– يشير التلميذ الأول إلى البنت المتجهة إلى منضدة ساندويتشات البرجر ويقول:

What's she going to have? – ماذا سوف تتناول؟

S2 : She's going to have a beefburger.

– ويرد التلميذ الثانى ويقول : سوف تتناول ساندوتش برجر.

Unit 3

(D) Listen and sing along. استمعوا وغنوا معًا:

- يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية ماذا ستأكلون؟ (What Are You Going to Have?)
ويرددونها: (كتاب الطالب Page 31)

The SONG

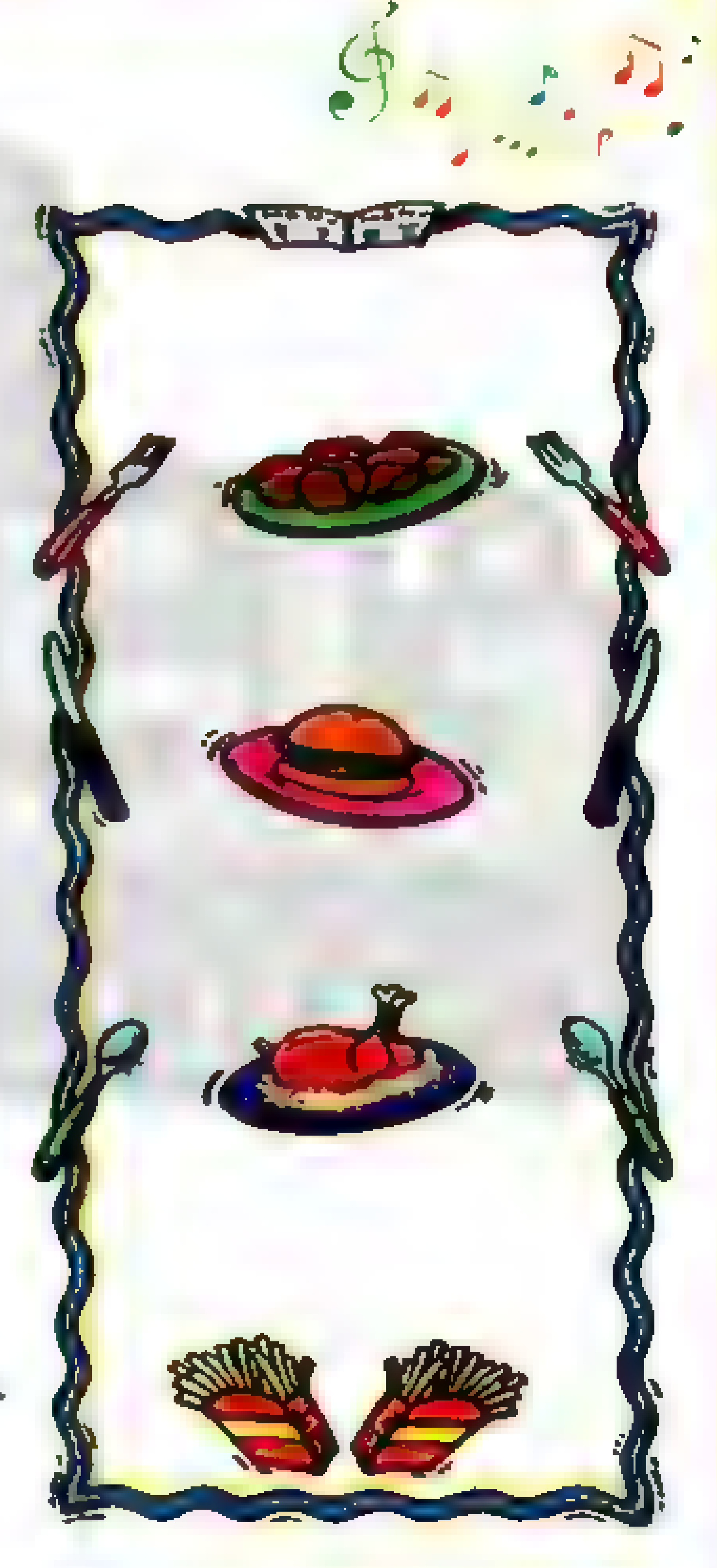
What Are You Going to Have?

What are you going to have?
What are you going to have?
What are you going to have?
We're going to have some kebabs.

What's she going to have?
What's she going to have?
What's she going to have?
She's going to have a beefburger.

What's he going to have?
What's he going to have?
What's he going to have?
He's going to have some chicken.

What are they going to have?
What are they going to have?
What are they going to have?
They 're going to have some French fries.





Exercises on Lesson





1 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one.

Answer

1	banana	kebab	pineapple	orange	....
2	water	festival	tea	juice	....
3	blue	red	juice	green	....
4	table	chair	window	some	....
5	lemonade	orange juice	water	spaghetti	....

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box.

have - cotton - salad - delicious - beefburger

I'm going to go to a big restaurant with my friend. I'm going to have a green ❶ .... and kebabs. My friend Samy is going to ❷ .... some French fries and a ❸ .... , too. Then, we are going to have ❹ .... candy.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- We are going to .... rice and kebab.

a. have b. has c. having d. had

2- What ... . you going to do? **2015** الشرقية - إدارة مشتول

a. is b. am c. are d. was

3- What is .... going to have?

a. he b. you c. they d. we

4- Dina and Mona .... going to have some lemonade.

a. is b. am c. was d. are

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

I have a good friend. His name is Tamer. He is eleven years old. He is in primary five. He goes to school on foot. He likes spaghetti. He doesn't like fish. We play football every Friday.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Tamer goes to school by car.		
2	Tamer doesn't like fish.		
3	Tamer is ten years old.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Does Tamer like spaghetti?

....

5- How old is Tamer?

....

5 Look and write a question and its answer:



1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

6 Punctuate the following

1- they re going to go to aswan

....

2- what s ali going to do

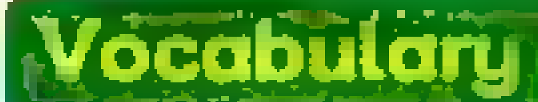
القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2014

....



Phonics Time وقت الصوتيات

SB Page: 22
WB Page: 20





Vocabulary المفردات

لاحظ نطق صوت الحرفين (er) فى نهاية الكلمات الآتية:

(er) / ər /

blister	بثرة / فقاعة في الجلد	butter	زبدة
dinner	وجبة العشاء	lobster	استاكوزا
mother	أم	tiger	نمر
swimmer	سباح	sister	أخت
brother	أخ	father	أب
bigger	أكبر	paper	ورقة
ruler	مسطرة	marker	قلم تحديد (سبورة)
computer	كمبيوتر	finger	إصبع اليد
eraser	أستيكة	pepper	فلفل
cucumber	خيارة (من الخضراوات)	water	مياه

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :




blister


lobster


butter

mother


dinner


tiger



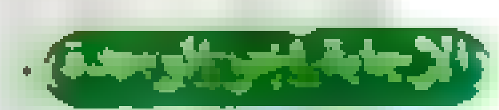
Unit

Listen and circle. : استمع وضع دائرة

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة

1	2	3	4
sister swimmer	brother Buster	bigger blister	father mother

Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen:

اقرأ الجُمل . اكتب الأرقام ثم استمع 

1- Buster the tiger had a blister.

2- Mother gave Buster lobster for dinner.

3- "I like lobster," said Buster.

4- Buster put butter on the blister.

5- But the blister got bigger.






Exercises on Lesson 4




1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	paper / pepper	2	swimmer / sister	3	Buster / blister

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة 2014

Mona : What are you going to have, mum?

Mum : I'm going to ❶ .... rice and meat.

Waiter : What are you ❷ .... to have, sir?

Dad : I'm going to have ❸ ....

Waiter : Good. Our hamburger is delicious. Would you ❹ .... to have some juice?

Dad : Yes, please.

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one

					Answer
1	kebab	chicken	beefburger	lemonade	....
2	ruler	eraser	blister	book	....
3	sister	tiger	brother	father	....
4	lobster	pepper	cucumber	finger	....
5	water	tea	lemonade	marker	....

Unit

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box

sister - help - set - beefburger - cucumbers

It's time for dinner at my house. My mother is going to ❶ .... the table. I'm going to ❷ .... her. My father is going to have a ❸ .... My ❹ .... is going to have kebab. We are all happy.

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- spaghetti - He - going to - is - have. — أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2015

....

2- cucumbers - Amin - have - to - likes. — الفيوم - إدارة أبشواى 2015

....

3- she - Does - eating - lobsters - like?

....

4- animal - the - Is - tiger - an?

....

6 Look and write a question and its answer

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

7 Punctuate the following

1- what s ahmed going to have — القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2014

....

2- he s going to cairo next week — القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2014

....

Remember



Vocabulary المفردات

Foods and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات

fried rice	أرز محمر	lemonade	عصير ليمون
green salad	سلطة خضراء	biscuit	بسكويت
kebab	كباب	spaghetti	مكرونة اسباجتى
French fries	بطاطس مقلية	barbecued chicken	دجاج مشوى
beefburger	ساندوتش برجر	popcorn	فيشار

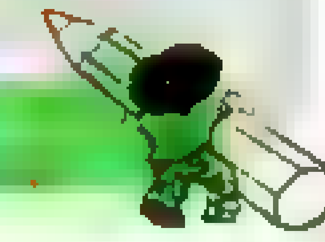
- لاحظ نطق الحرفين (er) فى صوت نهايات الكلمات الآتية:

(er) /ə/

blister	بثرة / فقاعة فى الجلد	butter	زبدة
dinner	وجبة العشاء	lobster	استاكوزا
mother	أم	tiger	نمر
ruler	مسطرة	paper	ورقة
computer	كمبيوتر	marker	قلم تحديد (سبورة)
eraser	أستيكة	finger	إصبع اليد
cucumber	خيارة (من الخضراوات)	father	أب

Grammar





• السؤال بـ "What ...?" فى زمن المستقبل مع (going to)

❶ What + ❷ am / is / are } + ❸ الفاعل + ❹ going to + ❺ inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

• فى الاجابة نستخدم:

❶	❷	❸	❹
I	→ am (='m)	+ going to	+ inf. مصدر الفعل
He - She - It - اسم مفرد	→ is (='s)		
You - They - We - اسم جمع	→ are (='re)		

Unit

نسمع الكلمات

انجليزى ← عربى

blister	....	French fries	....
swimmer	....	barbecued chicken	....
festival	....	green salad	....
spaghetti	....	beefburgers	....
finger	....	butter	....
paper	....	marker	....

عربى ← انجليزى

كباب	....	عصير ليمون	....
العشاء	....	حلوى	....
فيشار	....	لذيذ	....
أرز محمر	....	فول	....
شاى	....	خيار	....
تمر	....	مسطرة	....

Writing skills — Unit 5

السؤال السابع فى ورقة الامتحان:

7 Look and write a question and its answer — انظر واكتب السؤال الاجابة:

1.



- What are you going to have?
  I'm going to have some rice.

2.



- What are they eating?
  They are eating some popcorn.

3.



- Do you want French fries?
  No, I don't.

4.



- What did the tiger have?
  It had lobster.

السؤال الثامن فى ورقة الامتحان:

8 [illegible] write a [illegible] FOUR [illegible]

انظر واكتب فقرة انشائية من أربعة جمل:

• **Use the following guiding words:**

computer - desk - blister - marker

There is a computer on the desk. The boy has a blister. The marker is next to the ruler. The ruler is on the desk.



spaghetti - delicious - festival - barbecued

They are at the food festival. The food is delicious. There is some spaghetti. I can see barbecued chicken on the table.





Test 9



Unit Five

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	2	3
butter marker	mother father	blister lobster

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — القاهرة - إدارة مصر الجديدة 2015

Mostafa : Hi, Hanaa!

Hanaa : Hi, Mostafa! What are you (1) .... ?

Mostafa : Rice and meat. Try some. It's good.

Hanaa : No, (2) ....

Mostafa : Come on. Just a little.

Hanaa : Do you want (3) .... pineapple juice?

Mostafa : Yes, I (4) ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	kebab	beefburger	mother	spaghetti	....
2	red	yellow	black	two	....
3	bad	little	tea	delicious	....
4	marker	juice	ruler	eraser	....
5	want	eat	drink	what	....



Test nine

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: **(4 marks)**

like - delicious - mother - likes - brother

My family have lunch at a nice restaurant every week. My younger ❶ .... likes spaghetti. My ❷ .... likes beefburgers. My two sisters ❸ .... fried rice. I like French fries. All these foods are ❹ ....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: **(5 marks)**

It's time for dinner at my house. My sister is going to have a beefburger. My mother is going to have a cucumber . My brother is going to have lobster with butter. My father is going to have roasted peppers. I'm going to have some juice.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	My sister is going to have a beefburger.		
2	It's time for breakfast at my house.		
3	I'm going to have a cucumber.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What is your brother going to have?

....

5- Who's going to have roasted pepper?

....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences **(4 marks)**

1- you - What - going - are - to - have? (2014) الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس

....

2- rice - Does - he - to - like - eat?

....

Test

3- want - roasted - don't - I - peppers.

....

4- going - to - I'm - have - kebabs - some.

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

8 [illegible]

- **Use the following guiding words:**

dinner - cucumber - lobster - water

الوادى الجديد - إدارة الداخلة 2014

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following:

1- hatem and ahmed will go to cairo

....

2- what s mohamed writing

القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2015

....

Test 10



Units (4, 5, 6)

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	bottle / middle
2	kissed / kicked
3	tiger / finger

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

A : When did you have lunch?

B : I had it at two ❶ ....

A : Who made it?

B : My ❷ .... did.

A : Did you have ❸ ....?

B : No, I didn't

A : ❹ .... did you have?

B : Meat and rice.

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one

					Answer
1	juice	desk	window	door	....
2	banana	orange	apple	bike	....
3	ride	buy	send	visited	....
4	taxi	get	train	bus	....
5	ruler	eraser	paper	butter	....



Test

4 Choose the correct answer from a b.c or d

1- What are you going to .... ?
a. had   b. have   c. has   d. having

2- He is going to .... a friend.
a. visit   b. send   c. buy   d. take

3- I .... going to ride a bus.
a. 're   b. 's   c. 'm   d. 've

4- The food is ....
a. delicious   b. angry   c. hungry   d. sad

5 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Everyone in the family is going to do something. I'm going to send an email. My brother is going to download a video. My sister is going to buy an ice cream. My father is going to get a haircut. My mother is going to cook our lunch. In the evening, we're going to watch TV. We are very happy.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	My sister is going to cook our lunch.		
2	My family aren't happy.		
3	I'm going to send an email.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- When are you going to watch TV?

....

5- Who is going to buy an ice cream?

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- want - some - green salad - Do - you?

....

2- going - buy - an - I'm - to - ice cream.

....

3- see - I'm - going - a - to - film.

....

4- he - popcorn - Does - like?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences

- Use the following guiding words:

two - lunch - hungry - lobster

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following

1- let s go to the park on tuesday

....

2- are ahmed and fatma at home

....

Listening materials — Unit 5



Exercises - Lesson 1

1- Listen and complete:

Ahmed : Hi, Ali.
Ali : Hi, Ahmed. What are you **doing**?
Ahmed : I'm eating fried **rice**.
Ali : Is it **delicious**?
Ahmed : Yes, try **some**.
Ali : Thanks a lot.
Ahmed : You're welcome.

Exercises - Lesson 4
Phonics Time

B) Listen and circle:

1- swimmer, swimmer
2- brother, brother
3- blister, blister
4- mother, mother

C) Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen:

2, 3, 5, 4, 1

1- Listen and circle:

1- paper 2- sister 3- Buster

2- Listen and complete:

Mona : What are you going to have, mum?
Mum : I'm going to **have** rice and meat.
Waiter : What are you **going** to have, sir?
Dad : I'm going to have **hamburger**.
Waiter : Good. Our hamburger is delicious. Would you **like** to have juice?
Dad : Yes, please.

Test 9 - Unit 5

1- Listen and circle:

1- butter 2- father 3- lobster

2- Listen and complete:

Mostafa : Hi, Hanaa!
Hanaa : Hi, Mostafa! What are you **having**?
Mostafa : Rice and meat. Try some. It's good.
Hanaa : No, **thanks**.
Mostafa : Come on. Just a little.
Hanaa : Do you like **some** pineapple juice?
Mostafa : Yes, I **do**.

Test 10 - On Units (4 & 5)

1- Listen and circle:

1- bottle 2- kicked 3- finger

2- Listen and complete:

A : When did you have lunch?
B : I had it at two **o'clock**.
A : Who made it?
B : My **mother** did.
A : Did you have **fish**?
B : No, I didn't.
A : **What** did you have?
B : Meat and rice.



Aims of the Unit

Conversation Time (Lesson 1 – SB: P. 23 / WB: P. 21)

- elicit & express personal opinion
  - استنباط الرأى الشخصى والتعبير عنه
- ask for & give directions
  - السؤال عن الاتجاهات و الرد عليها
- identify speakers in a conversation
  - التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة

Word Time (Lesson 2 – SB: P. 24 / WB: P. 22)

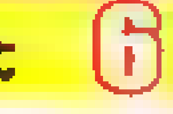
- write and read sentences — كتابة وقراءة جمل
- describe future activities related to seasons
  - وصف الأنشطة المستقبلية المتعلقة بفصول السنة

Practice Time (Lesson 3 – SB: P. 25 / WB: P. 23)

- use future with will (affirmative & negative statements)
  - استخدام زمن المستقبل البسيط مع (will) فى الإثبات و النفى
- inquire about past activities
  - الاستفسار عن الأنشطة فى الماضى

Phonics Time (Lesson 4 – SB: P. 26 / WB: P. 24)

- distinguish between sounds of : al , au, aw
  - التمييز بين الأصوات (al , au, aw)
- associate sound of letters with written form
  - ربط أصوات الحروف بصيغة كتابتها




Unit 6

Conversation Time وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 23
WB Page: 21



Vocabulary المفردات

At school فى المدرسة

subject	مادة دراسية	library	مكتبة (لقراءة واستعارة الكتب)
maths	مادة الرياضيات	music room	حجرة الموسيقى
art class	حصة الرسم	art room	حجرة الرسم
English	اللغة الانجليزية	books	كتب

Colours ألوان

blue	أزرق	red	أحمر
green	أخضر		

Other words كلمات أخرى

favourite	مفضل	fun	ممتع
across from	على الجهة المقابلة	put away	يضع شيء فى مكانه المعتاد
great	عظيم		

Expressions تعبيرات

Excuse me.	اعذرنى / معذرة.	Go straight.	(سر) امشى بشكل مستقيم.
You are welcome.	على الرحب / العفو.	It's time for...	حان الوقت لـ...

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
like يحب	liked	sweep يكنس	swept
		put يضع	put

Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم



- What's your favourite subject? ما هي المادة المفضلة لك؟
- I like maths. It's fun. أنا أحب مادة الرياضيات . إنها ممتعة .
- Excuse me. Where's the library? معذرةً . أين المكتبة ؟
- Go straight. It's across from the music room. سر (امشى) بشكل مستقيم . إنها فى الجهة المقابلة لحجرة الموسيقى .
- Oh. It's time for art class. أوه! حان وقت حصة التربية الفنية .
- Great. That's my favourite. عظيم . إنها المفضلة لي .
- I put away the books. وضعت الكتب في مكانها المعتاد.
- I swept the floor. كنست الأرضية.
- Thank you very much. شكراً جزيلاً.

Unit 6

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين:

Role-play the conversation with a partner. تبادل الأدوار مع زميلك:

• استمع وردد. وأشر إلى المتحدثين ثم تبادل الأدوار في المحادثة مع زميلك.



Tapescript نص الاستماع



1 Ramy : What's your favourite subject?

Laila : I like maths. It's fun.





2 Girl : Excuse me. Where's the library?

Laila : Go straight. It's across from the music room.





3 Girl : Thanks.

Laila : You are welcome.



4 Laila : Oh. It's time for art class.

Ramy : Great. That's my favourite.

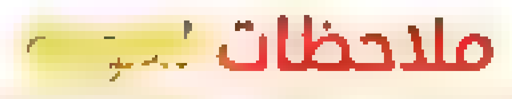
Review. Listen and repeat. راجع. استمع وردد.



 : I put away the books.

 : And I swept the floor.

 : Thank you very much.

Language Notes  ملاحظات لغوية



It's time for + اسم حان الوقت لـ

- It's time for art class. حان الوقت لحصة الرسم.

– للسؤال عن الأشياء المفضلة لدى شخص ما نستخدم:

What's your favourite subject / colour / animal?

ما هي/هو مادتك / لونك / حيوانك (المفضلة / المفضل) ؟

- I like maths / blue / dogs.
- My favourite subject is maths. = I like maths best.

= Maths is my favourite.

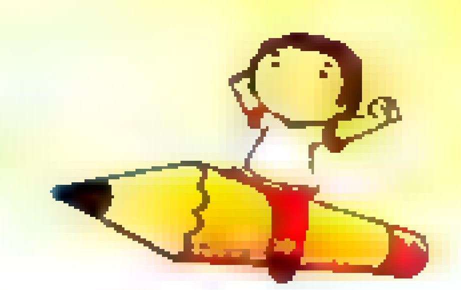
Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

– للسؤال عن الطريق ووصف الاتجاهات نستخدم:

- Go straight. امشى للأمام.
- across from + اسم مكان على الجانب الآخر
- It's across from the library. إنها على الجانب الآخر من المكتبة.

Exercises on Lesson





1 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Ramy : Excuse me. Can you help me?

Laila : Yes, I can.

Ramy : Where's the ❶ ....?

Laila : Go ❷ .... It's across from the music room.

Ramy : Is it near the ❸ .... room?

Laila : Yes, it is.

Ramy : Thanks.

Laila : You are ❹ ....

2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one

					Answer
1	English	Adel	Ali	Ahmed	....
2	seven	eight	nine	favourite	....
3	blue	red	week	yellow	....
4	art	Arabic	maths	great	....
5	play	like	swept	eat	....

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box

music - maths - fun - art - favourite

I go to school five days a week. I study ❶ .... .My ❷ .... subject is English. My friends and I can draw at the ❸ .... room. We can sing at the ❹ .... room.



4 Choose the correct answer from a b c or d

1- .... time for art class. الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين 2015

a. It b. They c. It's d. They're

2- Go straight. It's .... from the art room. WB

a. next b. across c. to d. in

3- What's your .... subject? بني سويف - إدارة إهناسيا 2015

a. middle b. little c. roasted d. favourite

4- I like maths. It's .... WB

a. fun b. bad c. happy d. sad

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- books - away - Noha - her - put.

....

2- art - for - It's - class - time.

....

3- your - green - Is - colour - favourite?

....

4- is - Where - library - the?

....

6 Punctuate the following

1- is art mona s favourite subject

....

2- my brother and i like english

....

Word Time وقت الكلمات

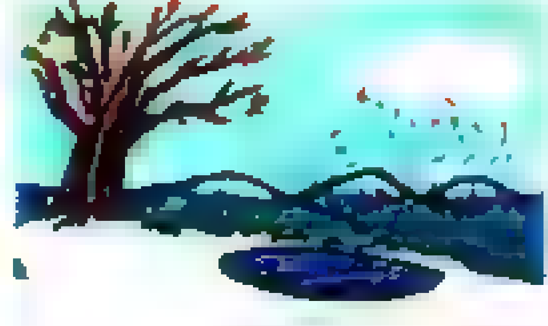
SB Page: 24
WB Page: 22

Seasons of the year فصول السنة


spring الربيع


summer الصيف


fall الخريف


winter الشتاء

Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتي مع أسماء


plant flowers يزرع زهور


pick apples يقطف التفاح


build a sandcastle يبنى قلعة من الرمال

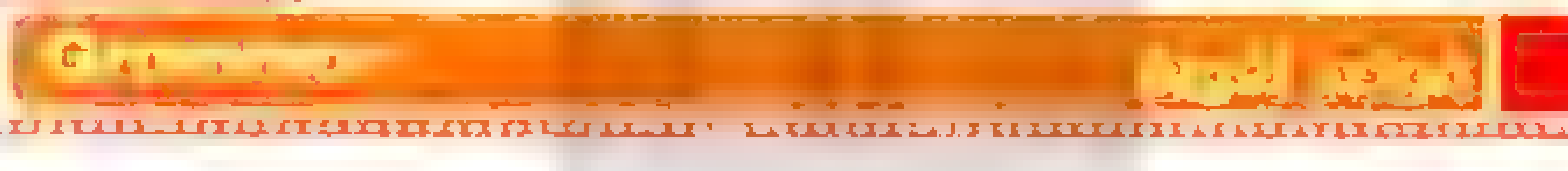

go to the beach يذهب إلى الشاطىء


play in the leaves يلعب بأوراق الشجر


go skiing يذهب للتزلج على الجليد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	**Past ماضٍ**	**Present مضارع**	**Past ماضٍ**
pick يلتقط / يقطف	picked	build يبني	built
plant يزرع	planted	go يذهب	went
play يلعب	played		



– للسؤال فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم :

❶ ❷ ❸ ❹

كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + فعل فى المصدر...?

– وفى الاجابة نستخدم:

❶ ❷ ❸

فاعل + فعل فى التصريف الثانى + باقى الجملة

- What did you do?
- I swept the floor and took out the rubbish.

– راجع استخدام going to للتعبير عن نية عمل شيء فى المستقبل:

I	am (='m)	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He - She - It - اسم مفرد	is (='s)	
We - They - You - اسم جمع	are (='re)	

- I'm going to go to the beach.
- She's going to pick apples.

Unit 6

Listen and repeat. :استمع وردد

Point and say the words. :أشر وقل الكلمات

WORD TIME

استمع الى نص الاستماع وردد الكلمات

1. spring
2. summer
3. fall
4. winter
5. plant flowers
6. pick apples
7. build a sandcastle
8. go to the beach
9. play in the leaves
10. go skiing

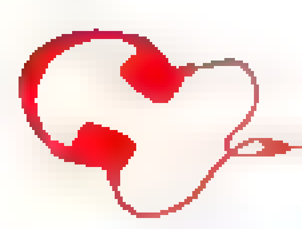


Listen and point. استمع وأشر :

• استمع وأشر إلى الكلمات الآتية فى الصورة السابقة.

- Summer.
- Spring.
- Winter.
- Fall.
- Go to the beach.
- Pick apples.
- Build a sandcastle.
- Plant flowers.
- Play in the leaves.
- Go skiing.

• استمع إلى الحوارات الآتية وأشر إلى المتحدثين فى الصورة السابقة.



1 A : What did you do?
B : I swept the floor and I took out the rubbish.
A : Wow! very good.

2 A : What are you eating?
B : Cotton candy. Try some. It's good.
A : No, thanks.
B : Aw, come on. Just a little.

3 A : What's wrong?
B : I can't find my glasses.
A : Don't worry. I'll help you look for them.
B : Okay. Thanks.



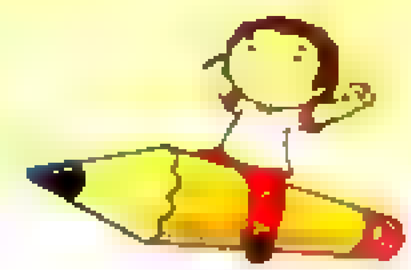
1- (Teacher and girl) مُدرسة والبنت
2- (Boy with cotton candy and girl) ولد معه غزل البنات وبنت
3- (Girl and boy looking for glasses) بنت وولد يبحثان عن النظارة

Write the words. اكتب الكلمات:

اكتب الكلمات فى القاموس الخاص فى نهاية الكتاب المدرسى صفحات (٣٢ - ٣٤).

Exercises on Lesson 2





1

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Ashraf : Hi, Magdy.
Magdy : Hi, Ashraf. I'm very sad.
Ashraf : What's ❶ ....?
Magdy : I can't ❷ .... my glasses.
Ashraf : Did you look ❸ .... them at your house?
Magdy : Yes, I did.
Ashraf : Don't ❹ ... . I'll help you look for them.
Magdy : Okay. Thanks.

2

					Answer
1	summer	fall	winter	leaves	....
2	flowers	Mona	Sarah	Hoda	....
3	went	want	like	play	....
4	good	hot	apple	cold	....
5	plant	year	build	pick	....

3

1- I'll go to the .... in the summer. سوهاج - إدارة المراغة 2015
 a. school b. house c. tent d. beach

2- Don't .... these apples. They are small.
 a. plant b. go c. pick d. build

3- My uncle . ... flowers in his garden.
 a. built b. went c. played d. planted

4- Hisham goes skiing in the ....
 a. winter b. spring c. summer d. fall

4 Read the passage and answer the questions

There are four seasons in the year. In the fall, we are going to play in the leaves. In the spring, we are going to plant flowers. In the summer, we are going to build sandcastles. Lots of people go to the beach to swim.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	In the fall, we aren't going to play in the leaves.		
2	In the spring, we are going to plant flowers.		
3	Lots of people go to the beach to swim.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How many seasons are there in the year?

....

5- When are we going to build sandcastles?

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- plant - the - He'll - spring - flowers - in. سوهاج - إدارة المراغة 2015

....

2- in - going - the leaves - I'm - play - to.

....

3- going - are - What - do - to - you?

....

4- beach - going - Are - to - the - you?

....





Unit 6

Practice Time وقت تدريب



SB Page: 25
WB Page: 23

Grammar موضوع لغوي

Future Simple with (will) زمن المستقبل البسيط مع (will)

- يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط مع will + inf. ليعبر عن أحداث أو حقائق في المستقبل.

Form التكوين

Affirmative في الإثبات

I - He - She - It / We - They - You } + will (='ll) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- He **will go** skiing in the winter.
- We **will pick** apples in the fall.

Negative في النفي

- تستخدم won't = (will not) وبعدها الفعل في المصدر للتعبير عن عدم حدوث شيء في المستقبل أو غير متوقع حدوثه.

I - He - She - It / We - They - You } + will not (= won't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- He **won't** play in the leaves.
- They **will not** build a sandcastle.

Question في السؤال

أداة استفهام + will + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- What will they do?
- They will plant flowers.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow غداً – next (week – month – year) الأسبوع – الشهر – العام (التالي)
in the future في المستقبل

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

I'll plant flowers in the spring.

I'll	→	I will
You'll	→	You will
He'll	→	He will
She'll	→	She will
We'll	→	We will
They'll	→	They will

I won't go skiing.

won't = will not

Listen and repeat.Then practise with a partner.

استمع و ردد. ثم تدرب مع زميلك:

• يتدرب التلاميذ على تكوين جُمل عما سيفعلوه فى فصول السنة باستخدام المستقبل البسيط فى الإثبات والنفى :



1 I'll go to the beach in the summer.

- I won't pick apples.

I/go to the beach/summer
pick apples



2 You'll pick apples in the fall.

- You won't go to the beach.

You/pick apples/fall
go to the beach



3 They'll build a sandcastle in the summer.

- They won't plant flowers.

They / build a sandcastle / summer / plant flowers



4 - He'll plant flowers in the spring.

- He won't build a sandcastle.

He/plant flowers/spring
build a sandcastle



5 - We'll play in the leaves in the fall.

- We won't go skiing.

We/play in the leaves/fall
go skiing



6 - She'll go skiing in the winter.

- She won't play in the leaves

She/go skiing/winter
play in the leaves



Look at page 24. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

– انظر إلى صفحة ٢٤ بالكتاب المدرسى . أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميلك .

S1 : (pointing to the boy thinking about planting flowers):

– يشير التلميذ الأول إلى الولد الذى يفكر فى زراعة الورد ويقول :

He'll plant flowers in the spring. – سوف يزرع ورد فى الربيع .

– ويرد التلميذ الثاني ويقول:

S2 : He won't play in the leaves. – سوف لا يلعب بأوراق الشجر .

Listen and sing along. استمعوا وغنوا معًا:

- يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية (He'll Pick Apples in the Fall) ويرددونها: (SB Page 31)

The SONG

He'll Pick Apples in the Fall

He'll pick apples in the fall, in the fall.
He'll pick apples in the fall, in the fall.
He won't build a sandcastle.
He won't build a sandcastle.
He'll pick apples in the fall.



She'll plant flowers in the spring, in the spring.
She'll plant flowers in the spring, in the spring.
She won't play in the leaves.
She won't play in the leaves.
She'll plant flowers in the spring.



Exercises on Lesson 3





1 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Rania : Hi, Soha. It's very cold today.

Soha : Yes, it's cold in the ❶ ....

Rania : What's your favourite ❷ .... ?

Soha : I like the summer.

Rania : What ❸ .... you do in the summer ?

Soha : I'll go to the beach and ❹ .... a sandcastle.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1- She .... pick apples in the summer.

a. 's b. 'll c. 've d. 're

2- Kareem will .... flowers in the spring.

a. planted b. plants c. planting d. plant

3- A: .... will you do? B: I'll plant flowers.

a. Where b. What c. When d. How

4- I'm ill. I .... go to the beach tomorrow.

a. don't b. won't c. didn't d. will

5- What will you .... after school? المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2015

a. do b. did c. does d. doing

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- like - Does - fall - Gehan - the?

....

2- do - What - you - will?

....

3- visit - my - I - uncle - will.

....

4- in - We - play - won't - leaves - the.

....

4 Look and write a question and its answer

1- ....?

....

2- ....?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences

- **Use the following guiding words:**

flowers - apples - skiing - sandcastle

الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2014

....

....

....

....

6 Punctuate the following

1- what will mohamed and farah do

....

2- i won t go skiing with eman

....

Unit



Phonics Time
وقت الصوتيات

SB Page: 26
WB Page: 24



Vocabulary المفردات

crayon	قلم ألوان شمع	board	سبورة

al /ɔ:/		aw /ɔ:/		au /ɔ:/	
talk	يتحدث	crawl	يزحف	laundry	الغسيل
fall	يقع	draw	يرسم	saucer	طبق الفنجان
small	صغير	law	قانون		
tall	طويل	paw	مخلب (حيوان)		
wall	حائط	jaw	فك		
call	يتصل	shawl	شال (يوضع على رأس أو كتف المرأة)		
chalk	طباشير				
walk	يمشي				
hall	قاعة / صالة				
ball	كرة				

• لاحظ أن الحروف al , aw , au فى الكلمات السابقة تنطق /ɔ:/

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :

-al -aw -au

fall laundry crawl



talk





saucer draw

Listen and circle. استمع وضع دائرة:

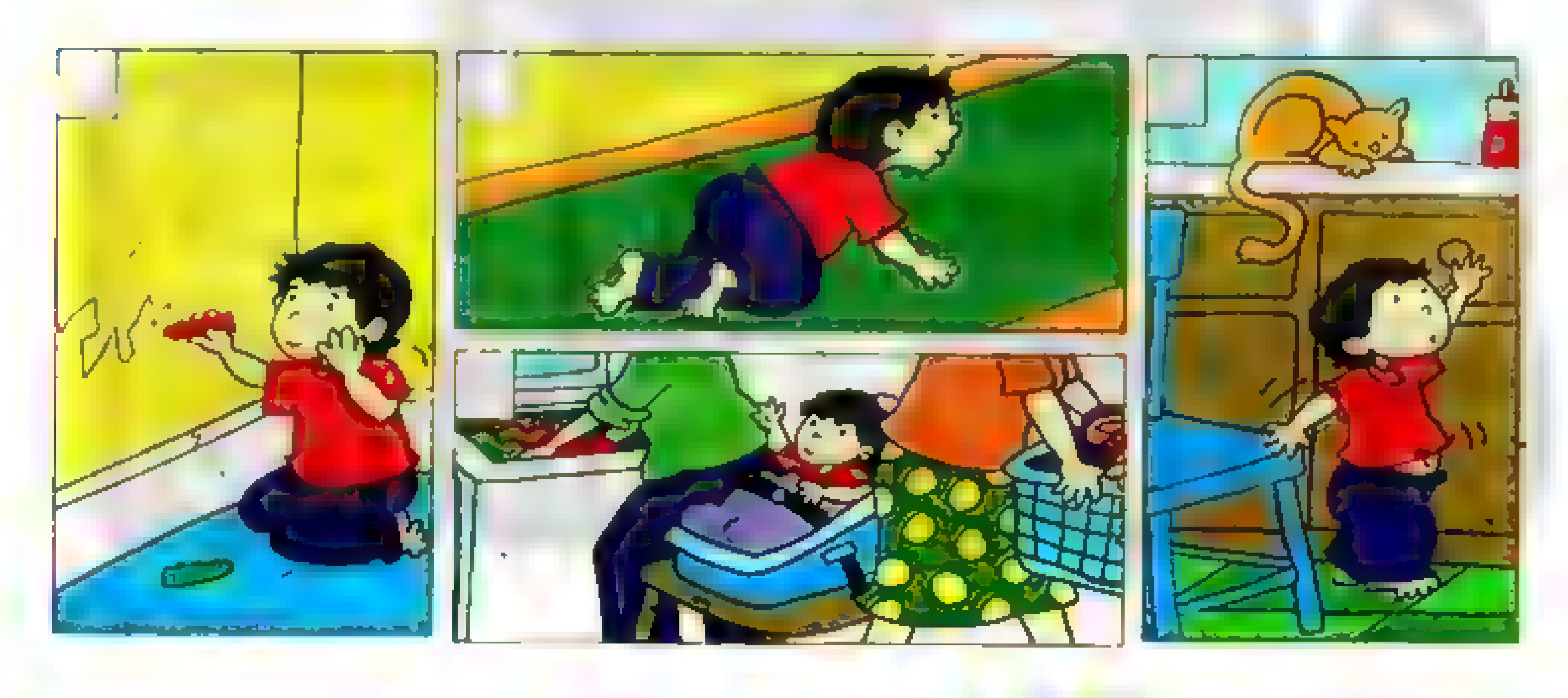

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
small shawl	law tall	paw wall	call chalk	walk jaw

Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

اقرأ الجُمل . اكتب الأرقام ثم استمع. (الإجابة آخر الوحدة)

1- Adel isn't tall. He's small.
2- Adel can't talk. He can't walk. He can't do the laundry.
3- But Adel can crawl. Oh, no! Adel is in the hall.
4- Adel has chalk. Look at the wall. He can draw.



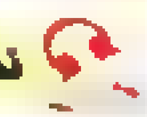


Exercises on Lesson 4





1 Listen and circle


نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	crawl / shawl
2	fall / call
3	jaw / paw

2 Listen and complete


نص الاستماع فى أخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Yasmeen : Hello, Amira. What will you do in the spring?

Amira : I'll ❶ .... flowers.

Yasmeen : Will you fly your ❷ .... ?

Amira : No, I ❸ ....

Yasmeen : Is the spring your ❹ .... season?

Amira : Yes, I like the spring.

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one.

					Answer
1	plate	saucer	fall	dish	....
2	marker	ruler	crayon	eat	....
3	small	law	tall	young	....
4	walk	wall	draw	crawl	....
5	Adel	Reem	Mona	Laila	....



4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

المنوفية - إدارة الباجور 2014

fall - skiing - beach - swim - spring

Everyone has his favourite season. Some people like the summer, they go to the (1) .... .Other people like the (2) .... to see a lot of flowers. I like the (3) .... to play in the leaves. My sister likes the winter. She can go (4) ....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.

1- Samira - the - do - Does - laundry?

....

2- shawl - My - has - a black - mother.

....

3- hall - isn't - in - Adel - the.

....

4- you - Will - me - call - tomorrow?

....

6 Look and write a question and its answer

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

Unit 6

Remember



Vocabulary المفردات

Seasons of the year فصول السنة

spring	الربيع	winter	الشتاء
summer	الصيف	fall	الخريف

[illegible]

plant flowers	يزرع زهور	pick apples	يقطف التفاح
build a sandcastle	يبنى قلعة من الرمال	go to the beach	يذهب إلى الشاطىء
play in the leaves	يلعب بأوراق الشجر	go skiing	يذهب للتزلج على الجليد

Nouns أسماء

year	عام – سنة	lizard	سحلية
subject	مادة دراسية	colour	لون
maths	مادة الرياضيات	library	مكتبة
fun	متعة / مرح	music room	حجرة موسيقى
animal	حيوان	art class	حصة تربية فنية

aw [illegible]

crawl	يزحف	shawl	شال (يوضع على عنق المراة)
draw	يرسم	law	قانون
paw	مخلب (حيوان)	jaw	فك

Remember

[illegible]

talk	يتحدث	walk	يمشى
fall	فصل الخريف / يقع	call	يتصل
chalk	طباشير	hall	قاعة / صالة

au / ɔː

laundry	الغسيل	saucer	صحن الفنجان

Grammar

Future Simple with (will) — زمن المستقبل البسيط مع (will)

Affirmative — فى حالة الإثبات

❶ I - He - She - It / We - They - You } ❷ + will (='ll) ❸ + inf. مصدر الفعل

Negative — فى النفى

❶ I - He - She - It / We - They - You } ❷ + will not (= won't) ❸ + inf. مصدر الفعل

Keywords — الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow غداً – next (week – month – year) الأسبوع – الشهر – العام (التالى)

in the future فى المستقبل

- She'll go to the beach in the summer.
- He won't plant flowers.

Unit 1

تسميع الكلمات

fun	....	go skiing	....
art class	....	crayon	....
across from	....	spring	....
play in the leaves	....	law	....
shawl	....	talk	....
jaw	....	wall	....
winter	....	go to the beach	....

مكتبة	....	عام – سنة	....
مادة الرياضيات	....	مفضل	....
يتصل	....	الخريف	....
حجرة الموسيقى	....	يزرع زهور	....
الصيف	....	يقطف التفاح	....
يبنى قلعة من الرمال	....	صحن الفنجان	....
الغسيل	....	يرسم	....
طباشير	....	صالة	....

Writing skills مهارات الكتابة — Unit 6



السؤال السابع فى ورقة الامتحان:

7 Look and write a question and the answer — انظر واكتب السؤال والاجابة:

1.
- What will he do?
He'll play in the leaves.

2.


- When will she go to the beach?
In the summer.

3.


- What will she do?
She'll pick apples.

4.

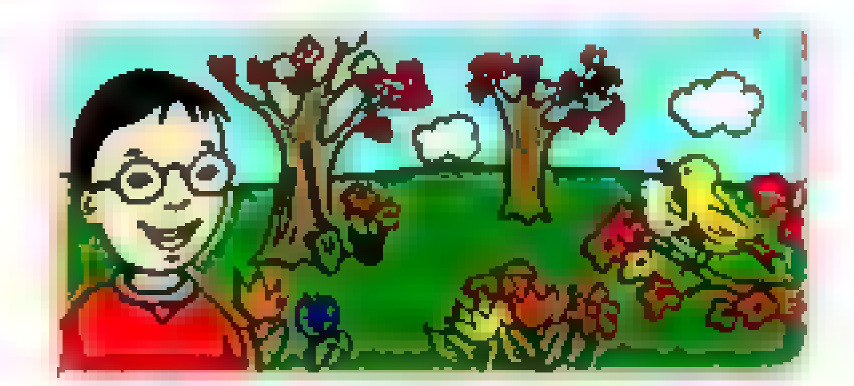

- What's this?
It's a saucer.

السؤال الثامن فى ورقة الامتحان:

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences — انظر واكتب فقرة انشائية من أربعة جمل:

- Use the following guiding words:

spring - flowers - favourite - birds



He is a boy. His favourite season is spring. He'll plant flowers. He won't play in the leaves.

school - put - floor - teacher



They are at school. Sokkar is putting away the books. Sokkara is sweeping the floor. The teacher is happy.



Test 11



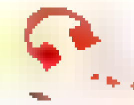
A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1	small hall
2	chalk talk
3	law draw

2 (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — البحيرة - إدارة التحرير 2015

A : Good morning.
B : Good morning.
A : What's your favourite ❶ ....?
B : I like ❷ .... It's fun.
A : Where is the ❸ ....?
B : It's across from the music room.
A : Thanks.
B : You are ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 (5 marks)

					Answer
1	library	beach	zoo	tiger	....
2	spring	fall	play	winter	....
3	English	maths	music	beach	....
4	like	built	went	swept	....
5	subject	leaves	flowers	grass	....



Test eleven

4 (4 marks)

كفر الشيخ - إدارة فوه 2015

spring - skiing - went - won't - pick

Ali likes the winter. He wants to go ❶............... . He ❷.. .. .. build sandcastles. Noura will play in the leaves in the fall. Ramy and Adel will plant flowers in the ❸............... . They won't ❹ .... apples.

5 (5 marks)

Adel and Nabil are friends. They are in Primary Five. They go to school by bus. Nabil likes English and music. Adel likes maths and Arabic. Nabil's favourite seasons are the summer and the spring, but Adel likes the summer and the fall. They have many friends. Their teachers like them. They are clever.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Adel and Nabil are in Primary Six.		
2	Nabil likes two seasons.		
3	Nabil and Adel are brothers.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What are Adel's favourite subjects?

....

5- Who likes Nabil and Adel?

....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 (4 marks)

1- is - my - English - subject - favourite.

....

2- it - Is - summer - hot - in?

....

Unit 6

3- will - build - a sandcastle - He . البحيرة - إدارة ايتاى البارود 2014

....

4- will - go - skiing - Why - you? القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2014

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer. (4 marks)

Maths

1. ....? 2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences (4 marks)

- **Use the following guiding words:**

fall - summer - apples - leaves

الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2015

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following (2 marks)

1- she ll go to alexandria in summer القاهرة - إدارة مصر الجديدة 2014

....

2- what is your favourite colour fatma

....

Listening materials — Unit 6



Exercises - Lesson 1

1- Listen and complete:

Ramy : Excuse me. Can you help me?
Laila : Yes, I can.
Ramy : Where's the library?
Laila : Go straight . It's across from the music room.
Ramy : Is it near the art room?
Laila : Yes, it is.
Ramy : Thanks.
Laila : You are welcome.

Exercises - Lesson 2

1- Listen and complete:

Ashraf : Hi, Magdy.
Magdy : Hi, Ashraf. I'm very sad.
Ashraf : What's wrong?
Magdy : I can't find my glasses.
Ashraf : Did you look for them at your house?
Magdy : Yes, I did.
Ashraf : Don't worry. I'll help you look for them.
Magdy : Okay. Thanks.

Exercises - Lesson 3

1- Listen and complete:

Rania : Hi, Soha. It's very cold today.
Soha : Yes, it's cold in the winter.
Rania : What's your favourite season ?
Soha : I like the summer.
Rania : What will you do in the summer ?
Soha : I'll go to the beach and build a sandcastle.

Exercises - Lesson 4
Phonics Time

B- Listen and circle:

1- small, small
2- law, law
3- wall, wall
4- chalk, chalk
5- walk, walk

C- Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen:

4, 3, 1, 2

1- Listen and circle:

1- shawl 2- call 3- jaw

2- Listen and complete:

Yasmeen : Hello, Amira. What will you do in the spring?
Amira : I'll plant flowers.
Yasmeen : Will you fly your kite?
Amira : No, I won't .
Yasmeen : Is the spring your favourite season?
Amira : Yes, I like the spring.

Test 11 - Unit 6

1- Listen and circle:

1- hall 2- talk 3- draw

2- Listen and complete:

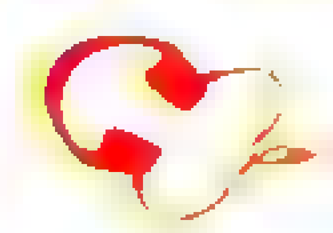
A : Good morning.
B : Good morning.
A : What's your favourite subject?
B : I like English . It's fun.
A : Where is the library?
B : It's across from the music room.
A : Thanks.
B : You are welcome.



www.zakrooly.com
Time For English
الفصل الدراسى الاول
Review 2
Sokkara's World
عالم سكرة
Aims of Review 2
Story Time
Lesson 1 - SB: P.27 / WB.P. 33
• participate in a conversation
• المشاركة فى محادثة
• identify meaning of a conversation
• التعرف على معنى محادثة
Activity Time
Lesson 2 - SB: P.28 / WB.P. 34
• recognize and produce words vocabulary
• التعرف على الكلمات ومعانيها
هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولى التعليمى ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى
كتاب Bit By Bit
موقع ذاكرولى التعليمى
الصف الخامس الابتدائى



Review 2



Story Time
Sokkara's World

SB Page: 27
WB Page: 33

A. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد :



1 **Sokkara** : Excuse me. I'm looking for the music room.

Principal (مدير المدرسة) : Go straight. It's on the left.



2 **Sokkara** : I'm going to see a show. What are you going to do?

Sokkar : I'm going to buy an ice cream.



3 **Sokkar** : Excuse me. What are you eating?

Boy : Kebab. Try some. It's delicious.

Sokkar : Mm. It's good!

Review 2

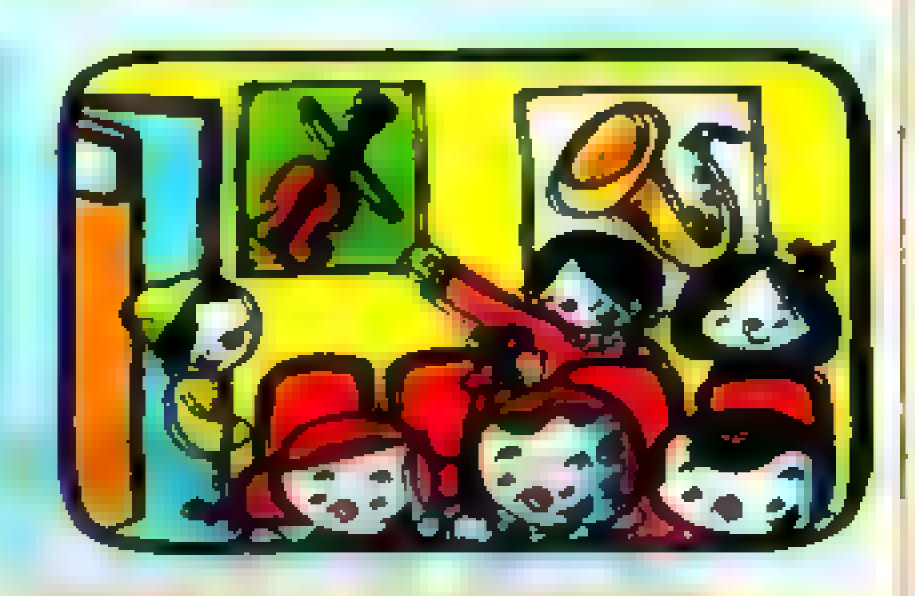
4 Chef puppet الطاهى الدمية : What are you going to have?

Sokkar : I'm going to have some kebab, some French fries, a beefburger, some salad, and some lemonade.



5 Sokkar : Hey ,Sokkara!

Sokkara : Hi, Sokkar. It's time for the show.



6 Sokkar : Try some, Sokkara. It's kebab. It's good.

Sokkara : No, thanks. We shouldn't eat here.

Puppet : Sh! Be quiet!



Look at A. Listen and Point. انظر إلى التمرين (A). استمع وأشر:

Listen. Circle True or False. استمع وضع دائرة حول True or False:

1	Sokkara is looking for the art room.	True	(False)
2	Sokkar wants an ice cream.	True	False
3	Sokkar likes the kebab.	True	False
4	Sokkar is going to have a beefburger.	True	False
5	Sokkar is a quiet puppet.	True	False

Role-play these scenes. أعد تمثيل الأدوار للمحادثة السابقة مع زملائك:







Activity Time

SB Page: 28
WB Page: 34



A. Listen and write. استمع واكتب:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

1. Ramy is going to talk to a tiger.
2. Peter is going to draw a bottle.
3. The lobster is going to crawl in the puddle.
4. My mother is going to make dinner for my uncle.

1. R______y is going to t______k to a tig______.
2. Pet______ is going to dr______ a bott______.
3. The lobst______ is going to cr______l in the pudd______.
4. My moth______ is going to make dinn______ for my unc______.





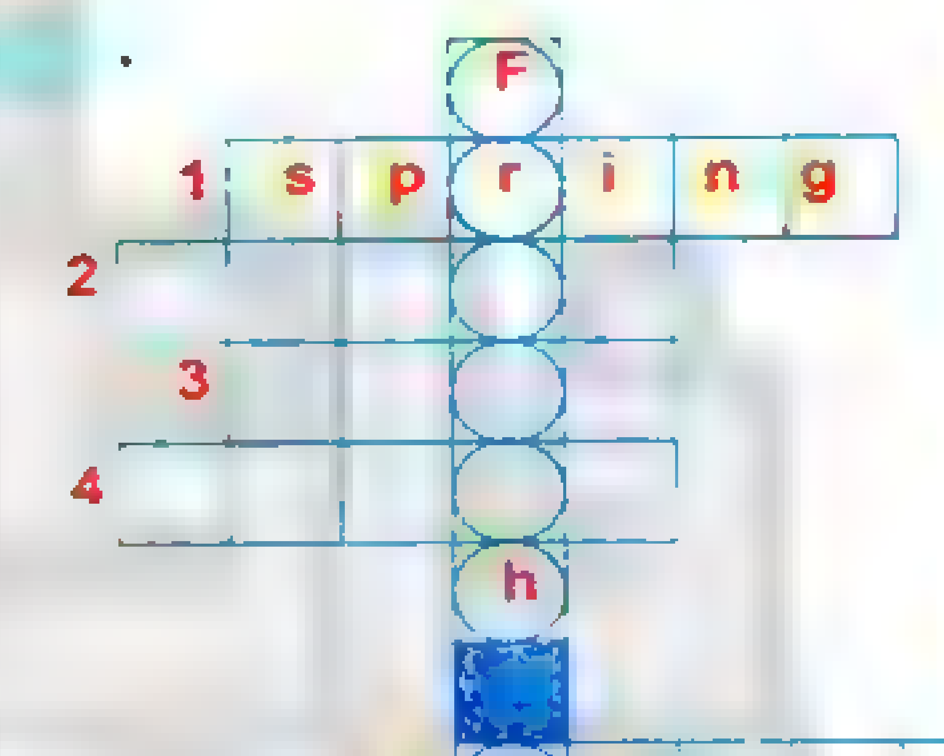




Review 2

Complete the puzzle. What's Mona going to have?

1. He'll plant flowers in the **spring** .
2. I'm going to rent (يؤجر) a ______________ . I'm not going to see a show.
3. We'll build a ______________ castle on the beach.
4. I'm hungry. I'll have chicken and rice for ______________ .
5. We'll play in the leaves in the ______________ .
6. They'll go to the beach in the ______________ .
7. I'll go skiing in the ______________ .
8. I'm going to mail a ______________ .





Final Revision

A- Revision on Vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

Foods and drinks الأطعمة والمشروبات

beans	فول	fried rice	أرز محمر
cheese	جبن	cereal	طعام من الحبوب
pineapple juice	عصير أناناس	popcorn	فيشار
spaghetti	مكرونة إسباجتي	kebabs	كباب
lemonade	عصير ليمون	French fries	بطاطس مقلية
cotton candy	حلوى غزل البنات	beefburgers	ساندوتشات برجر
barbecued chicken	دجاج مشوى	green salad	سلطة خضراء
fruit	فاكهة	iced tea	شاى مثلج

Adjectives الصفات

wrong	خطأ	thirsty	عطشان
heavy	ثقيل	delicious	لذيذ
strong	قوى	happy	سعيد
hungry	جائع / جوعان	careful	حريص
far	بعيد	near	قريب

Directions الاتجاهات

turn left	استدر يساراً	turn right	استدر يميناً
on the left	على اليسار	on the right	على اليمين

Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتى مع أسماء

make the bed	يرتب السرير (الفراش)	ride the bus	يركب أتوبيس
sweep the floor	يكنس أرضية الحجرة	buy an ice cream	يشترى أيس كريم
do the laundry	تقوم بغسل الملابس	get a haircut	يقص شعره
feed the pets	يطعم الحيوانات المنزلية	download a video	يقوم بتحميل فيديو

set the table	يعد / يجهز المائدة	rent a video	يؤجر فيديو
brush the cat	تطف القطة بالفرشاة	visit a friend	يزور صديق
call her mother	تتصل بأمها	send an e-mail	يرسل بريد الكترونى
chop the logs	يقطع جذوع الشجر	take a taxi	يأخذ تاكسى
wash the dress	تغسل الفستان	plant flowers	يزرع زهور
play chess	يلعب شطرنج	pick apples	يقطف التفاح
bake a pie	يخبز فطيرة / كعكة	kiss the frog	يُقبل الضفدعة
see a film	يشاهد فيلم	play in the leaves	يلعب بأوراق الشجر
build a sandcastle	يبنى قلعة من الرمال	go to the beach	يذهب إلى الشاطىء
put away the groceries	يضع البقالة فى مكانها المعتاد	hang up the clothes	تعلق الملابس على شماعة
take out the garbage / rubbish	يخرج/ يتخلص من القمامة	go skiing	يذهب للتزلج على الجليد

Camping activities أنشطة المعسكر

cook breakfast	يطهو وجبة الافطار	listen to stories	يستمع إلى قصص
laugh at jokes	يضحك على النكات	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل
watch the sunrise	يشاهد شروق الشمس	play cards	يلعب الكوتشينة
wash the pots and pans	يغسل الأوانى والطاسات	clean the tent	ينظف الخيمة

Leisure activities أنشطة وقت الفراغ

drink juice	يشرب عصيرًا	see a show	يشاهد عرض
win a prize	يفوز بجائزة	buy tickets	يشترى تذاكر
eat cotton candy	يأكل حلوى غزل البنات	have lunch	يتناول وجبة الغداء
go on a ride	يذهب لركوب لعبة فى الملاهى	take pictures	يلتقط صورًا

B- Revision on Phonics Time مراجعة على الصوتيات

sh (ʃ) شـ		ch (tʃ) تـش	
sheep	خروف	cheese	جبن
shirt	قميص	catch	يمسك
dish	طبق	watch	يشاهد
fish	سمكة / سمك	peach	خوخة
th voiceless		**th voiced**	
three	ثلاثة	mother	أم
pr		**br**	
present	هدية	bread	خبز
		bring	يحضر
cr		**gr**	
cry	يبكى	green	أخضر
creek	جدول مائى	grass	حشائش
dr		**tr**	
drum	طبلة	tree	شجرة
drink	يشرب		
sl		**pl**	
slide	زحليقة	plane	طائرة
		plum	برقوق
sp		**fl**	
spoon	ملعقة	flower	وردة
Spain	أسبانيا	fly	يطير
spider	عنكبوت		
sm		**sn**	
smile	يبتسم	sneeze	يعطس
smell	يشم		

Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in (ed)

• نطق الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط عندما يضاف (ed) في نهاية الفعل.

حيث ينطق (ed) آخر الفعل إما / t / أو / d / أو /id/

الحالة الأولى : إذا انتهى الفعل بإحدى الحروف f, k , ke, p, ss, gh, x, sh, ch, ce ..

فإن الـ ed تنطق (t) :

bake → baked kiss → kissed

الحالة الثانية : أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ .. b, g, m, n, ll, r, v, z, s,

فإن الـ ed تنطق (d) :

pull → pulled climb → climbed

الحالة الثالثة : أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ t -d - te

فإن الـ ed تنطق (id) :

dust → dusted invite → invited

• لاحظ (le) في نهاية هذه الكلمات تنطق /l/ :

le /l/

beetle	خنفساء	bicycle	دراجة
candle	شمعة	bottle	زجاجة
uncle	عم / خال	puddle	بركة مياه

• لاحظ نطق الحرفين (er) في صوت نهايات الكلمات الآتية:

er / ər /

blister	بثرة / فقاعة في الجلد	lobster	استاكوزا
swimmer	سباح	tiger	نمر
eraser	ممحاة / استيكة	paper	ورقة
cucumber	خيارة	marker	قلم تحديد (سبورة)
finger	إصبع اليد	pepper	فلفل

• لاحظ نطق الحرفين (al , aw , au) في الكلمات الآتية /ɔ:/ :

aw /ɔ:/

crawl	يزحف	shawl	شال (يوضع على كتف المرأة أو رأسها)
draw	يرسم	law	قانون
paw	مخلب (حيوان)	jaw	فك

al / ɔ: /

talk	يتحدث	walk	يمشى
fall	فصل الخريف / يقع	call	يتصل
small	صغير	chalk	طباشير
tall	طويل	hall	قاعة / صالة
wall	حائط	ball	كرة

au / ɔ: /

laundry	الغسيل	saucer	صحن الفنجان

C- Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

1- Past Simple زمن الماضى البسيط

Form: التكوين

– يعبر الماضى البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

• تكون الأفعال فى الماضى من التصريف الثانى للفعل.

– التصريف الثانى إما أن يكون الفعل منتظم فضيف للفعل (d / ed / ied)

أو فعل غير منتظم يحفظ كما هو.

like ⟶ liked played ⟶ played

carry ⟶ carried cut ⟶ cut

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

- yesterday أمس - last ...... (week - month) الماضى (الأسبوع – الشهر)
- in the past فى الماضى

Negative: النفى

• لنفى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

❶ الفاعل + ❷ did not (= didn't) + ❸ inf. مصدر الفعل

- He washed his hands. ⟶ - He didn't wash his hands.
- They won a prize. ⟶ - They didn't win a prize.

Question: السؤال

للسؤال بـ "هل ... ؟" فى زمن الماضى البسيط (Yes / No) questions نستخدم :

Did + الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

- Did you play cards? — هل كنت تلعب الكوتشينة ؟
- Did she climb a mountain? — هل تسلّقت الجبل ؟

- وللإجابة بالإثبات نستخدم الصيغة المختصرة: **Yes, + الفاعل + did.**
- وللإجابة بالنفى نستخدم الصيغة المختصرة: **No, + الفاعل + didn't.**

- **(Wh- questions) in the Past Simple:**

• السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

What / Where / Why / When ❶ + did ❷ + الفاعل ❸ + inf. مصدر الفعل ❹ ..?

وفى الإجابة نستخدم: **فاعل ❶ - فعل فى التصريف الثانى ❷ - باقى الجملة ❸**

- Why did you come late? — لماذا أتيت متأخراً؟
  Because I went to bed late.
- What did you do yesterday? — ماذا فعلت بالأمس؟
  I swept the floor.

2- Future Simple with (going to + inf. مصدر الفعل)
زمن المستقبل البسيط مع going to + inf.

- نستخدم (going to + inf. ......) للتحدث عن خطط مستقبلية أو قرارات مسبقة أو نية لعمل شيء.

Form: التكوين

❶	❷	❸	❹
I	→ am (= 'm)	+ going to	+ inf. مصدر الفعل
He - She - It - اسم مفرد	→ is (= 's)		
You - They - We - اسم جمع	→ are (= 're)		

- I'm going to take a taxi.
- He's going to visit a friend.
- They're going to feed the pets.

Negative: النفى

I	→	am		
He - She - It - اسم مفرد	→	is	+ not	+ going to + inf.
We - They - You - اسم جمع	→	are		

- I'm not going to ride the bus.
- We aren't going to buy an ice cream.

Question: السؤال

– للسؤال بـ "What..?" فى زمن المستقبل مع going to نستخدم:

What + am / is / are + الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

• فى الاجابة نستخدم:

- What are you going to have? ماذا سوف تتناول (تأكل)؟

I'm going to have kebabs.

3- Future simple with "will" المستقبل البسيط مع will

Subject الفاعل	Affirmative اثبات	Negative نفى
I , They , We You , He , She It , اسم مفرد , اسم جمع	will (='ll) +inf. مصدر الفعل	will not (= won't) + inf. مصدرالفعل

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

- tomorrow غداً – next (week – month – year) (الأسبوع – الشهر – العام (التالى)
- in the future فى المستقبل

- She'll go to the beach in the summer.
- He won't plant flowers.



Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم

- Wake up, Mona. استيقظى يا منى.
- It's time for breakfast. حان وقت تناول وجبة الإفطار.
- Good. I'm hungry. حسنًا. إننى جوعانة.
- What's for breakfast? ما الطعام المعد للإفطار ؟
- We're having beans and eggs. سنتناول فول وبيض.
- I'm really thirsty. أنا عطشان جداً.
- Let's get some juice. دعنا نتناول بعض العصير.
- I don't have enough money. أنا لا أمتلك مالًا كافيًا.
- It's my treat. إنه على حسابى. / على نفقتى.
- What kind of juice do you want? ما نوع العصير الذى تريده؟
- Pineapple juice, please. عصير أناناس، من فضلك.
- Me,too. و أنا أيضًا.
- Let me help you, Mum. اسمحى لى أن اساعدك يا أمى.
- Be careful. It's heavy. كن حذرًا / احترس. إنها ثقيلة.
- I'm strong. أنا قوى.
- Are you okay? هل أنت بخير؟
- I think so. But look at my skateboard. أعتقد ذلك. ولكن انظر إلى لوحة التزحلق الخاصة بى.

- Excuse me. I'm looking for the museum. Is it far?

لو سمحت . أنا أبحث عن المتحف . هل هو بعيد؟

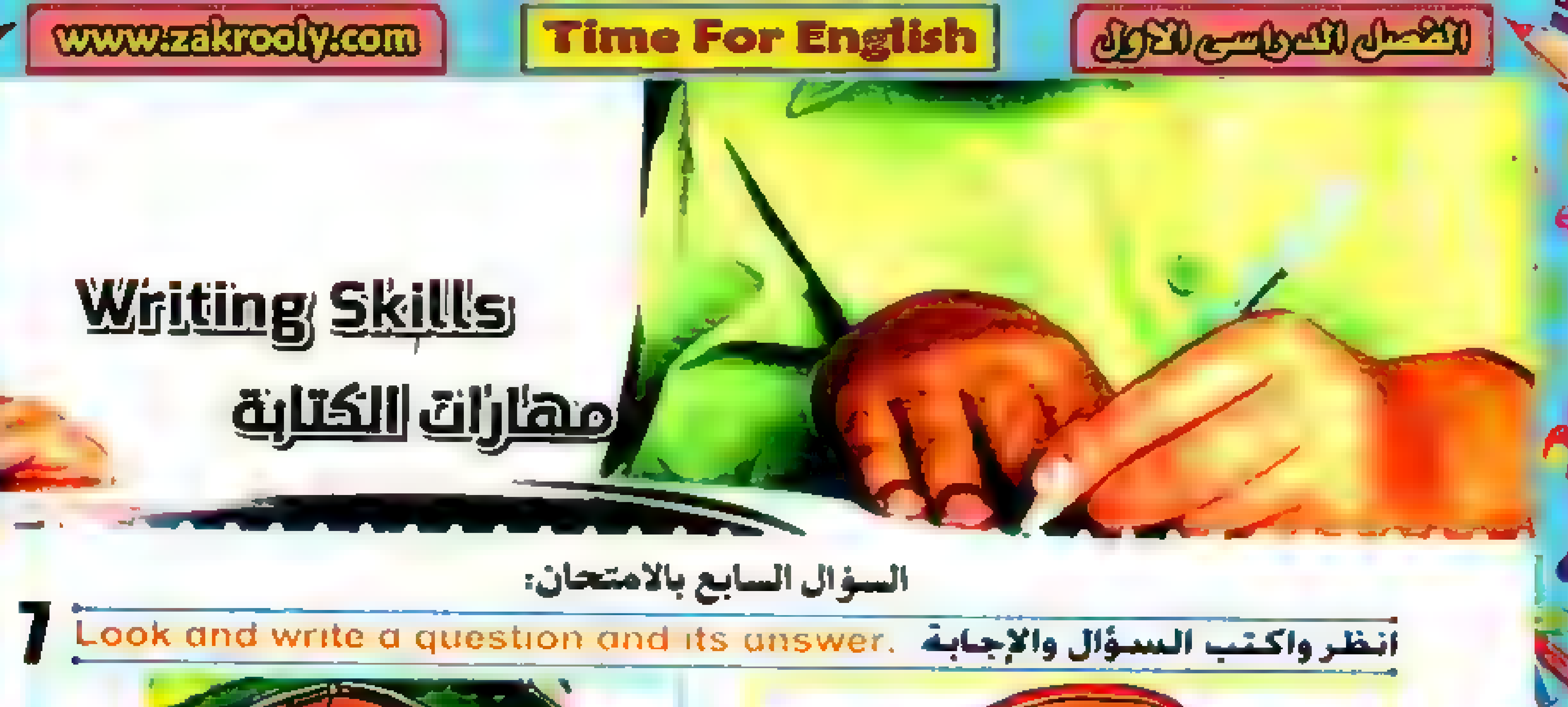
- Not really! ليس بعيد جداً!
- Walk two blocks. Turn right. It's on the left.

تخطى عمارتين . ثم استدر يمينًا . إنه على اليسار.

- Did you say turn right or turn left? هل قلت استدر يمينًا أم يسارًا؟
- Turn right. It's on the left. استدر يمينًا. إنه على اليسار.
- Thank you very much. شكرًا جزيلاً لك.
- You're welcome. Have fun! عفوًا. أتمنى لك وقتا ممتعاً.
- Fried rice. Try some. It's good. أرز محمر . جربى بعض منه . إنه جيد.
- Come on. Just a little. هيا تذوقى و لو قليل.
- Oh, all right. But not too much. أوه .حسنا . ولكن ليس كثيرًا.
- Here you go. هيا تذوقى هذا (تفضلى).
- Hey! It's delicious. أوه ! إنه لذيذ !.
- I told you so. لقد اخبرتك بذلك.
- What's your favourite subject? ما هى المادة المفضلة بالنسبة لك؟
- I like maths. It's fun. أنا أحب مادة الرياضيات . إنها ممتعة.
- Excuse me. Where's the library? معذرة . أين المكتبة ؟
- Go straight. It's across from the music room.

سر (أمشى) بشكل مستقيم . إنها فى الجهة المقابلة لحجرة الموسيقى.

- Oh. It's time for art class. أوه! حان وقت حصة التربية الفنية.
- Great. That's my favourite. عظيم . إنها المفضلة بالنسبة لى.

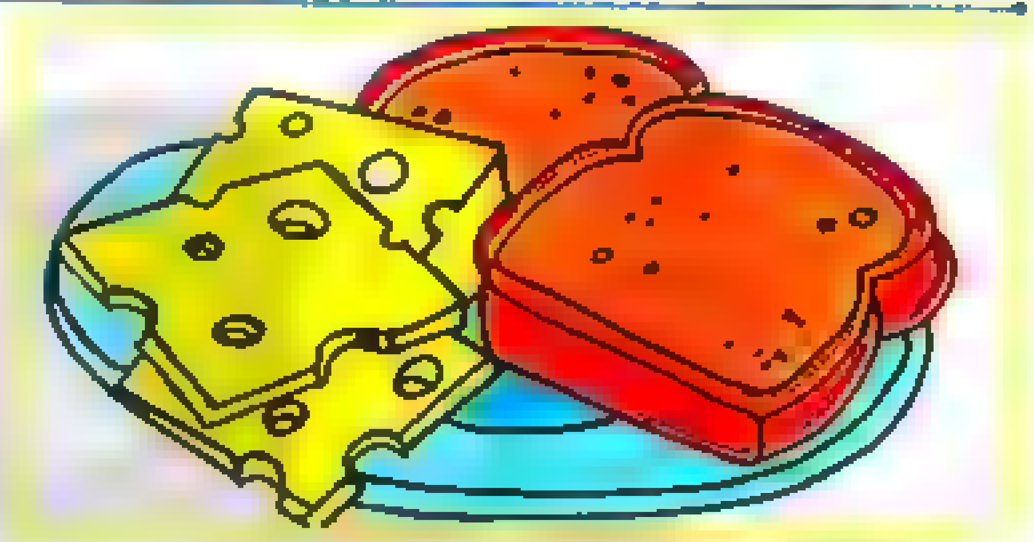


السؤال السابع بالامتحان:

7 Look and write a question and its answer. انظر واكتب السؤال والإجابة



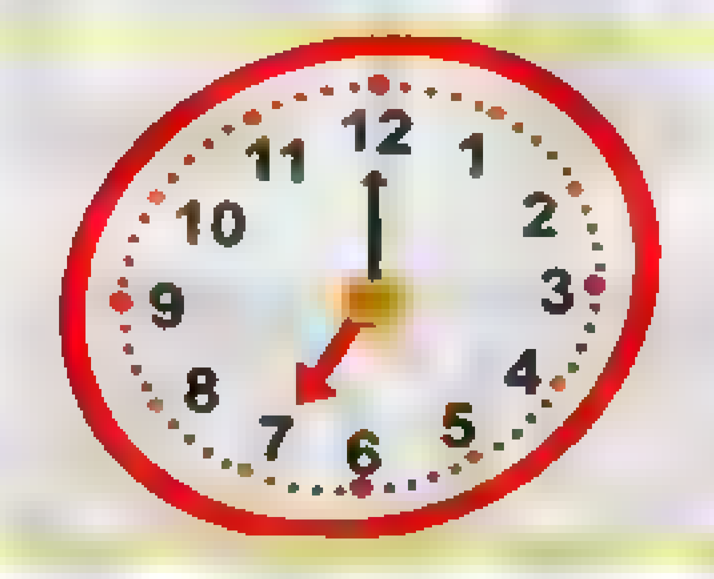
1. Did she clean the tent?
Yes, she did.



2. What's for breakfast?
We're having cheese and bread.



1. What did they do?
They watched the sunrise.



2. What time is it?
It's seven o'clock.



1. What kind of juice do you want?
Pineapple juice, please.



2. What did they eat?
They ate cotton candy.



Writing skills



1. Did they see a show?
No, they didn't.



2. When did they have lunch?
They had lunch at two o'clock.



1. What did he do?
He fed the pets.



2. Did she make the bed?
No, she didn't. She swept the floor.



1. What is she doing?
She is doing the laundry.



2. What did he do?
He put away the groceries.



1. What is he going to do?
He is going to send an email.



2. What are they going to do?
They are going to see a film.

Writing skills



1. Can you ride a bike?
Yes, I can.



2. What are you eating?
Fried rice.



1. What is he going to have?
He is going to have some spaghetti.



2. Who is she?
She is my mother.



1. What is this?
This is a tiger.



2. What's your favourite subject?
I like maths.

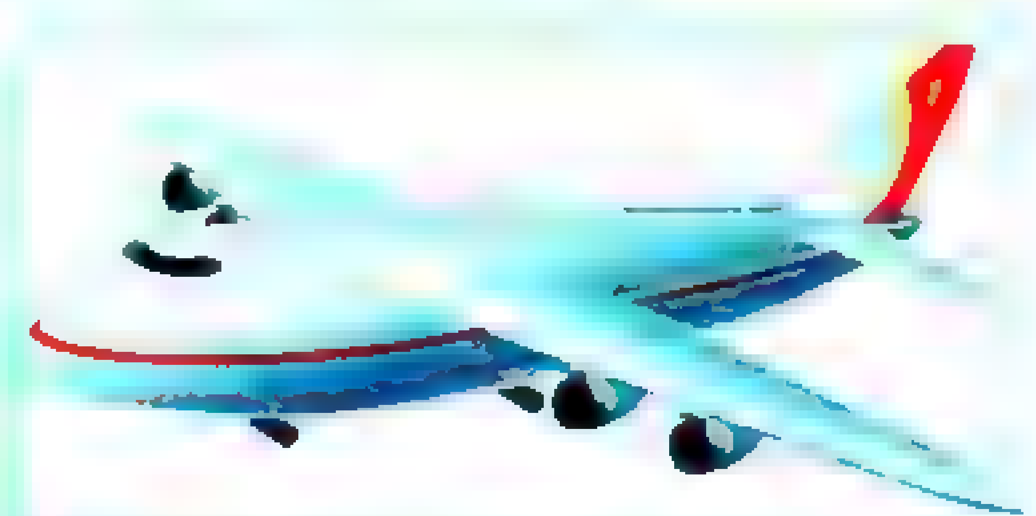


1. What will she do?
She'll pick apples.



2. What's your favourite season?
I like spring.

Writing skills





1. What's this?
   This is an aeroplane.

2. What is she going to do?
   She going to buy an ice cream.

السؤال الثامن بالامتحان:

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences

انظر واكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل

1- The boys are at the campsite. They are listening to stories. They are laughing at jokes . They are happy.



2- We were at the campsite yesterday. We cooked breakfast. We watched the sunrise. I cleaned the tent.



3- They are at the park. The girls are eating plums. There is a slide. The boys are flying kites.



4- Hoda and Mona are at the campsite. Hoda wakes Mona up. It's time for breakfast. Mona is hungry.



5- I went to the amusement park with my friends. We saw a show. We drank juice. We were very happy.



6- The boy is helping his mother. The box is heavy. The boy is strong. There is a skateboard.



7- She is my mother. She is doing the laundry. I'm helping my mother at home. I'm sweeping the floor.



8- The girl hung up the clothes. The boys took out the rubbish. The mother put away the groceries. The father did the laundry.

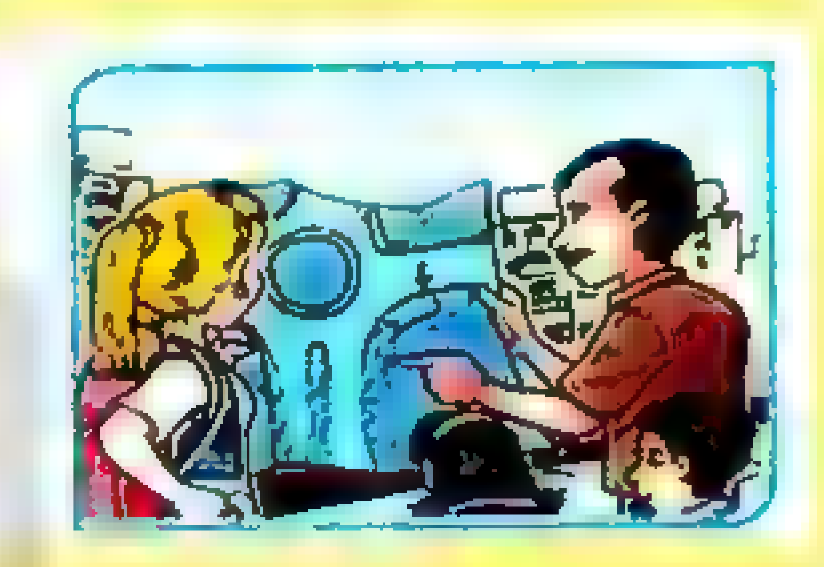


Writing skills

9- We are at the beach. My brother likes swimming. My sister likes bulding sandcastle. We are very happy.



10- The girl is looking for the museum. She is looking at the map. She will walk two blocks. The museum is on the left.



11- The girls are riding the bus. My father is getting a haircut. My mother is taking a taxi. My sister is buying an ice cream.



12- We went to the zoo. We took a taxi. My father bought tickets. We saw animals.



13-I can see a boy and girl. They are having lunch. They are eating rice. The rice is delicious.

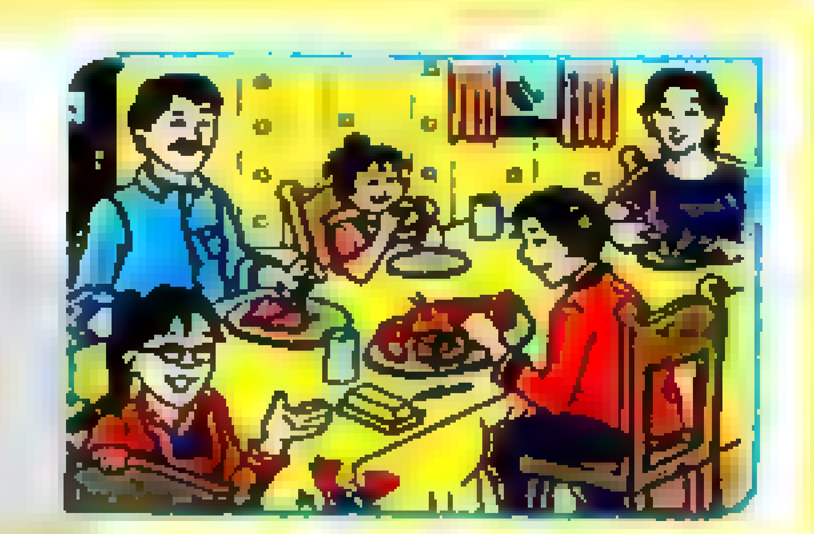


Writing skills

14- This is a big restaurant. The boy is going to have barbecued chicken. The girl is going to have spaghetti. The food smells good.



15- It's time for dinner. My sister is going to have a beefburger. My brother is going to have lobster. My brother is going to have roasted pepper.



16- I can see a boy and two girls. They are at school. The girl is looking for the library. It's across from the music room.



17- Their favourite season is the summer. They are on the beach. They are playing with a ball. They are happy.



18- I'll plant the flowers in the spring. I'll go to the beach in the summer. I'll play in the leaves in the fall. I'll go skiing in the winter.



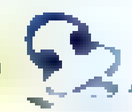
General Exercises



أسئلة عامة على الورقة الامتحانية تشتمل على امتحانات الادارات السابقة وأسئلة **Workbook**

السؤال الأول بالامتحان:

1 Listen and circle:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
like / night	chair / sheep	won / took
tree / three	cry / drum	bread / present

الغربية - إدارة سمنود 2016

1	2	3
Nile / middle	saucer / crawl	walk / take

السؤال الثاني بالامتحان

2 Listen and complete.


نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Hoda : Wake up, Mona!

Mona : What ❶ .... is it, Hoda?

Hoda : It's seven o'clock. It's time for breakfast.

Mona : ❷ .... I'm hungry. What's for breakfast?

Hoda : We're having ❸ .... and eggs.

Mona : Smells ❹ ....

2015 الشرقية - إدارة مشتول

Teacher : Did you help your mother at home?
Pupil : Yes, I did.
Teacher : ❶ .... did you do?
Pupil : I made my bed and ❷ .... the floor.
Teacher : And did you ❸ .... the laundry?
Pupil : No, I ❹ .... .My mother did it.

2016 الغربية - إدارة سمنود

A : How do you go to school?
B : I go to school ❶ .... foot.
A : ❷ .... is your favourite subject?
B : It's ❸ ....
A : Why do you ❹ .... it?
B : Because it's fun.

السؤال الثالث بالامتحان:

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

Answer

1	winter	spring	fall	Sunday	....
2	spaghetti	kebab	cat	beefburger	....
3	chopped	have	dusted	cooked	....
4	museum	library	home	art	....
5	father	mother	brother	teacher	....

Final Revision

المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء 2015

					Answer
1	English	Arabic	red	history	....
2	cooked	write	washed	played	....
3	fish	father	mother	sister	....
4	turtle	cat	kebab	tiger	....
5	car	bus	taxi	school	....

WB page 34

					Answer
1	winter	spring	summer	apple	....
2	sea	leaves	beach	sand	....
3	maths	English	film	history	....
4	see	visit	building	download	....
5	spaghetti	lemonade	kebab	chicken	....

السؤال الرابع بالامتحان:

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

camp - pans - stories - doesn't - jokes

Today is a holiday. Maha ❶ .... go to school. She goes to a ❷ .... She has breakfast with her friends. They're having milk, eggs and beans. They laugh at ❸ .... They listen to stories. They wash the pots and ❹ ....

OR

4 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

WB page 32

1- Mona watered the .... and brushed her hair.
a. planes b. plants c. chairs d. clocks

2- I didn't have enough .... to buy popcorn.
a. pictures b. flowers c. boys d. money

3- I'll .... the bed.
a. win b. write c. laugh d. make

4- I .... the table for dinner.
a. fed b. hung c. did d. set

WB page 34

1- I'm .... to visit my friend tomorrow.
a. go b. goes c. went d. going

2- Did you say turn .... or turn left?
a. wrong b. favourite c. right d. left

3- A: .... is the library? B: It's on the left.
a. Whose b. Where c. When d. Who

4- I will go skiing in the ....
a. morning b. winter c. summer d. spring

السؤال الخامس بالامتحان:

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Ahmed is in primary five. He likes kebab and spaghetti. He likes drinking lemonade. His brother Amr likes green salad and burger. They go to school by bus. They do their homework at seven o'clock.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Ahmed is in primary six.		
2	Ahmed likes drinking lemonade.		
3	Amr likes green salad and burger.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Ahmed and Amr go to school?

....

5- When do Ahmed and Amr do their homework?

....

Ali and his family had a camp in the mountains. They woke up at 7 o'clock because it was time for breakfast. They had beans and eggs for breakfast. Grandfather watched the sunrise. In the evening, they played cards.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Grandfather watched the sunrise.		
2	They played cards in the morning.		
3	They had beans and eggs.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did grandfather do?

....

5- When did they play cards?

....

الوادي الجديد - إدارة الداخلة 2016

Heba is a pupil. She's eleven years old. She is a good girl. She gets up at six o'clock every day. She makes her bed and has breakfast with her family. She walks to school because her school is near her house. She helps her mother in the kitchen. Her father and mother love her.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False) :

		True	False
1	Heba is a teacher.		
2	Heba goes to school by car.		
3	Heba isn't a bad girl.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How old is Heba?

....

5- When does Heba get up?

....

السؤال السادس بالامتحان:

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

1- me - you - Let - , mum - help.

....

2- going to - an - Are - buy - you - ice cream?

....

3- camp - summer - I - the - went - to - in - the.

....

4- Where - you - go - did - winter - last?

....

البحيرة - إدارة إدكو 2015

1- you - What - yesterday - did - do?

....

2- the - I - pets - feeding - 'm.

....

3- beans - They - eggs - having - are - and.

....

4- is - Where - , please - museum - the?

....

Final Revision

الغربية - إدارة سمنود 2016

1- your - subject - What's - favourite?

....

2- will - plant - I - spring - the - flowers - in.

....

3- she - tent - Did - the - clean?

....

4- the - riding - They - are - bus.

....

السؤال السابع بالامتحان:

7 Look and write a question and its answer:



1. ....?

....



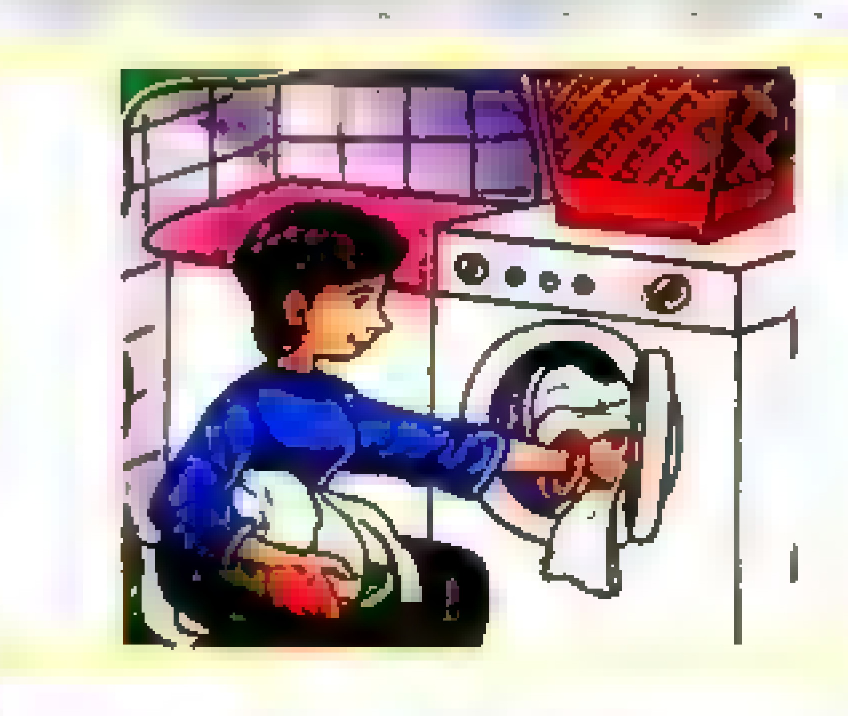
2. ....?

....



1. ....?

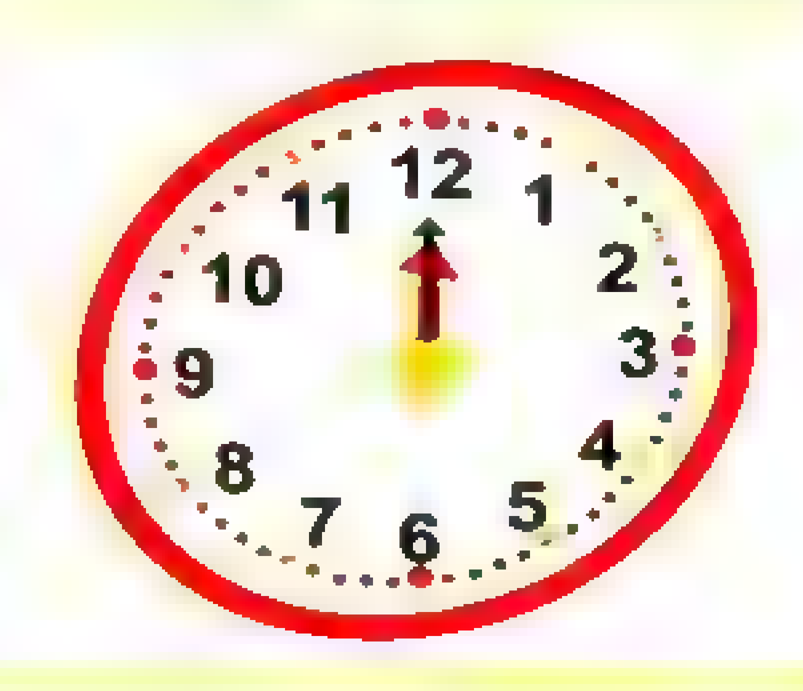
....



2. ....?

....





1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

السؤال الثامن بالامتحان:

8

- Use the following guiding words:

visit - elephant - pictures - happy



....

....

....

....

- Use the following guiding words:

last week - farm - sheep - cow



....

....

....

....



Final Revision

• **Use the following guiding words:**

floor - pets - football - reading



....

....

....

....

السؤال التاسع بالامتحان:

9 Punctuate the following

1- is ahmed s brother good

....

2- are cairo and alexandria big towns

....

دمياط - إدارة الزرقا **2015**

1- i m going to visit hassan tomorrow

....

2- what s sami eating

....

الغربية - إدارة سمنود **2016**

1- let s go to the cinema on monday

....

2- what s magdy doing

....

اختبارات كتاب التدريبات صفحات (39 : 44)

Sample Test 1





A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

1	2	3
bottle / puddle	uncle / bicycle	saw / wow

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Hoda : Wake up, Mona!
Mona : What ❶ .... is it, Hoda?
Hoda : It's seven ❷ .... It is time for breakfast.
Mona : What's for ❸ ....?
Hoda : We are having beans and ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	pots	dogs	forks	pans	....
2	juice	lemonade	salad	water	....
3	breakfast	cheese	three	bread	....
4	Friday	Monday	May	Tuesday	....
5	blue	red	juice	green	....



Tests

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: (4 marks)

ate - cooked - bought - dish - fish

My mother has a fish. Father likes fish. Mother puts the fish on a ❶ .... .The dish is full of crabs. She ❷ .... lunch for father. Father ❸ .... bread. He ❹ .... fish and crabs. Mother brought a spoon to have rice. Fish was my mother's favourite.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Sara and Israa were classmates زملاء دراسة. Grandmother was old. Sara and Israa swept the floor, took out the garbage, made the bed, hung up clothes and did the laundry for grandmother.Grandmother wanted to set the table for lunch , but Sara and Israa did that for her. Grandmother was happy. She kissed Sara and Israa. They kissed grandmother.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Sara and Israa were pupils. (طلاب)		
2	Grandmother set the table for lunch.		
3	Grandmother was happy.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Sara and Israa take out?

....

5- Why did grandmother kiss Sara and Israa?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- Mona - stories - listens - to.

....

2- breakfast - **She** - cooks - our. ....

3- you - **Did** - say - right - turn? ....

4- did - **What** - do - they? ....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

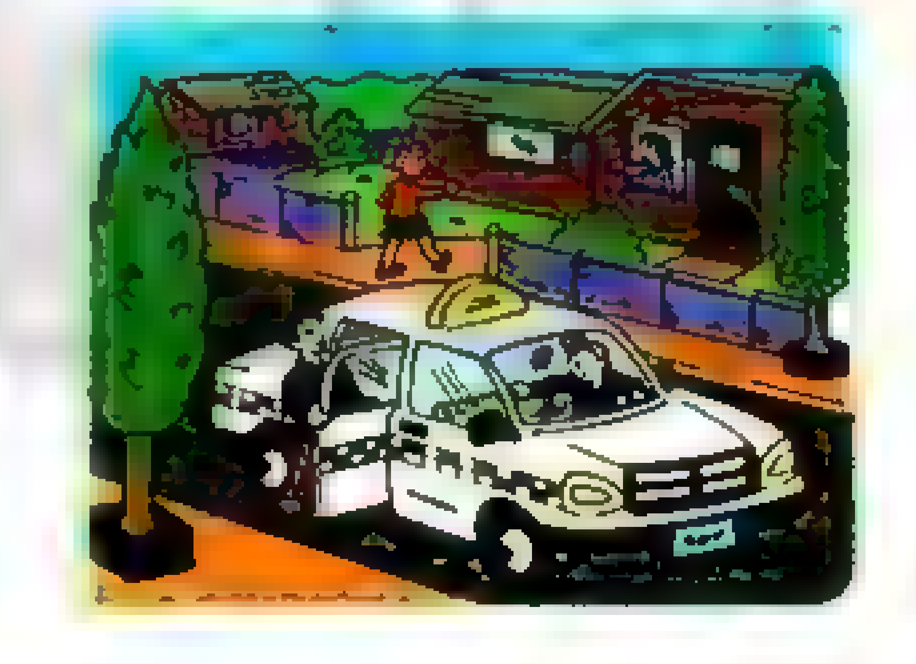
1. .... ?
....

2. .... ?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

• **Use the following guiding words:**

taxi - take - visit - clean



....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- i met heba and mona yesterday

....

2- is samy going to come on monday

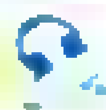
....

Sample Test 2



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

1	three / tree
2	flower / mother
3	slide / smile

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Bosy : It's so hot. I'd like to drink something.

Amr : What will you ❶ ....?

Bosy : ❷ .... juice, please.

Amr : Do you want ❸ ....?

Bosy : Yes, ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	kebab	salad	beefburger	lemonade	....
2	class	teacher	lobster	board	....
3	mountain	Mona	Ali	Hoda	....
4	greeted	bread	waited	invited	....
5	where	how	were	when	....



Tests

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... .I need juice.
a) hungry b) thirsty c) okay d) careful

2- What's your .... subject?
a) middle b) little c) roasted d) favourite

3- She's .... to ride the bus.
a) meeting b) going c) taking d) eating

4- She .... tickets.
a) drank b) went c) bought d) chopped

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Norhan's favourite subject is English. She likes to read English in the library. She thinks that English is fun. In summer , she goes to the library with her friend Bosbos. They help their friends in the library. They put away books, sweep the floor and water the library flowers. They like to go to the library three times a week.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Norhan's favourite subject is English.		
2	Norhan goes to the library alone. (بمفردها)		
3	Norhan likes to read English in the library.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Norhan and Bosbos help their friends?

....

5- Why does Norhan like English?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- She's - visit - going - to - a friend.

....

Tests

2- the - riding - **They** - are - bus.

....

3- Hany - **Does** - the board - draw - on?

....

4- are - **What** - going - you - to have?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

breakfast - my family - like - favourite

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- ahmed met mary and sameer yesterday

....

2- What s mona s favourite animal

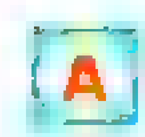
....

Sample Test 3





A Listening (12 Marks)



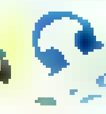
1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

1	2	3
chop / shop	better / butter	crawl / scrawl

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

A : Excuse me . Im looking for the ❶ .... Is it far ?

B : Turn right . It is ❷ .... the left.

A : Did you say turn right or turn ❸ .... ?

B : Turn right . It is on the left.

A : ❹ .... you very much.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	father	uncle	sister	brother	....
2	wash	cook	orange	study	....
3	picture	lunch	juice	rice	....
4	camp	home	pot	tent	....
5	beans	tickets	cheese	eggs	....



Tests

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: (4 marks)

yard - busy - lazy - hanging - putting

Everyone is ❶ .... today. Mona's grandmother is ❷ .... up the clothes. The pets are in the ❸ .... eating their food .Mona's brother is doing the laundry. Mona is in her bedroom making her bed. Mona's brother is ❹ .. .. away the groceries.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Rehab and her sister Sara had breakfast very early in the morning. After breakfast , they had orange juice . Then Rehab swept the floor. When their friend Laila came , they went out. Laila wanted to have a haircut . In the evening , Rehab and Sara went back home and Laila gave them two stories to read. The stories were nice.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Rehab and Sara had juice in the evening.		
2	Sara swept the floor.		
3	Laila went out with Sara and Rehab.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Laila give Rehab and Sara?

....

5- Why did they go out?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- will - She - a haircut - have.

....

2- for - looking- **I'm** - museum- the.

....

3- are - you - **What** - eating?

....

4- Reem's - **What's** - animal - favourite?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....? 2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

hot - thirsty - drink - orange

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- adel and mona aren t tall

....

2- is english ahmed's favourite subject

....

Test 4

محافظة القاهرة
إدارة الساحل التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

1	present / bread
2	Nile / middle
3	saucer / crawl

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Ali : What are you eating, Mona?
Mona : Chicken and rice. Do you want to ❶ .... some?
Ali : No, thanks.
Mona : Come ❷ .... Just a little.
Ali : Oh, all right. But not too ❸ ....
Mona : Do you ❹ .... juice?
Ali : Yes, I do.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	winter	beach	summer	spring	....
2	green	blue	yellow	bread	....
3	cooked	listened	played	cards	....
4	lobster	orange	apple	pineapple	....
5	haircut	car	taxi	bus	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... I need juice.
a. hungry b. thirsty c. okay d. careful

2- The library is across .... the music room.
a. on b. from c. in d. to

3- Did you .... the pans?
a. wash b. washed c. washes d. washing

4- .... me. Where can I find the museum?
a. Need b. Excuse c. Walk d. Thank

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Eman's favourite subject is English. She likes to read English in the library. She thinks that English is fun. In summer, she goes to the library with her friend Laila. They help all their friends in the library. They put away the books, sweep the floor and water the flowers. They go to the library three times a week.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True / False
1	Laila's favourite subject is English.	
2	Eman goes to the library alone.	
3	Eman likes to read English in the library.	

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Eman and Laila help their friends?

....

5- How many times do they go to the library?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- download - Did - a video - you?

....

2- doing - are - What - now - they?

....

3- likes - She - the - feeding - pets.

....

4- go - skiing - We - winter - in - the.

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

summer - beach - hot - sandcastle

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- let s go to the cinema on monday

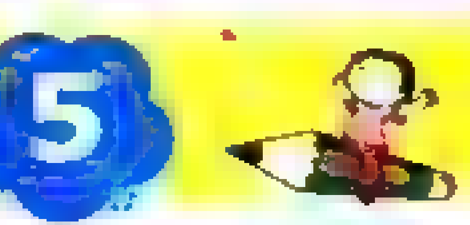
....

2- are ayman and jana tall

....

محافظة الجيزة
إدارة الصف التعليمية

Test 5



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

1	beetle / puddle
2	bread / present
3	better / butter

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Heba : What are you eating?
Dina : Fried rice. Do you want to ❶ .... some?
Heba : No, ❷ ....
Dina : Come on. Just a ❸ ....
Heba : Hey! It's delicious.
Dina : What do you like to ❹ ....?
Heba : Apple juice, please.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	museum	cinema	show	library	....
2	download	send	get	friend	....
3	baked	cooked	chess	chopped	....
4	candy	cat	ant	dog	....
5	bus	turtle	taxi	train	....

Tests

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** (4 marks)

1- My sister is looking .... her bag. She can't find it.
a. of b. after c. for d. at

2- He .... a haircut. He likes it short.
a. takes b. gets c. sends d. downloads

3- I'm really .... .Let's get some juice.
a. careful b. okay c. hungry d. thirsty

4- A: .... they do the laundry? B: No, they didn't.
a. Does b. Did c. Were d. Do

5 **Read the passage and answer the questions:** (5 marks)

Every morning, I get up at six o'clock. It's time for breakfast. My mother cooks breakfast. I smell breakfast. We have beans and eggs. My favourite food for breakfast is eggs.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	My mother cooks breakfast.		
2	I smell lunch.		
3	We have beans and eggs.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- When do you get up?

....

5- Does your mother cook breakfast?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** (4 marks)

1- She's - visit - going - to - a friend.

....

2- the - riding - They - are - bus.

....

3- Hany - Does - the - fruit - eat?

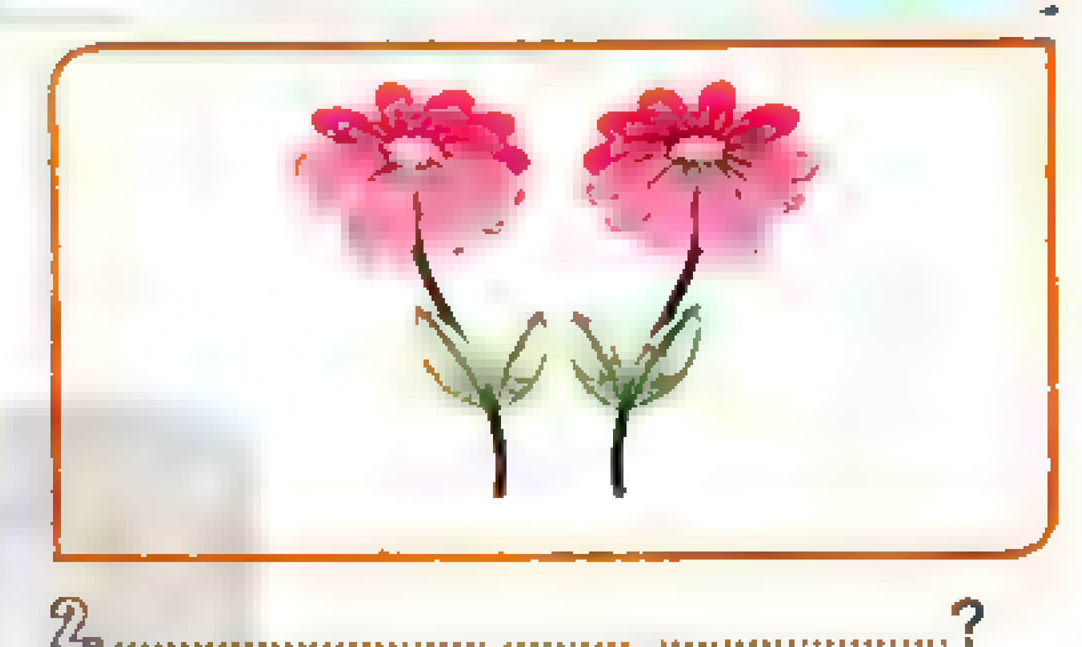
....

4- did - What - do - they?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)





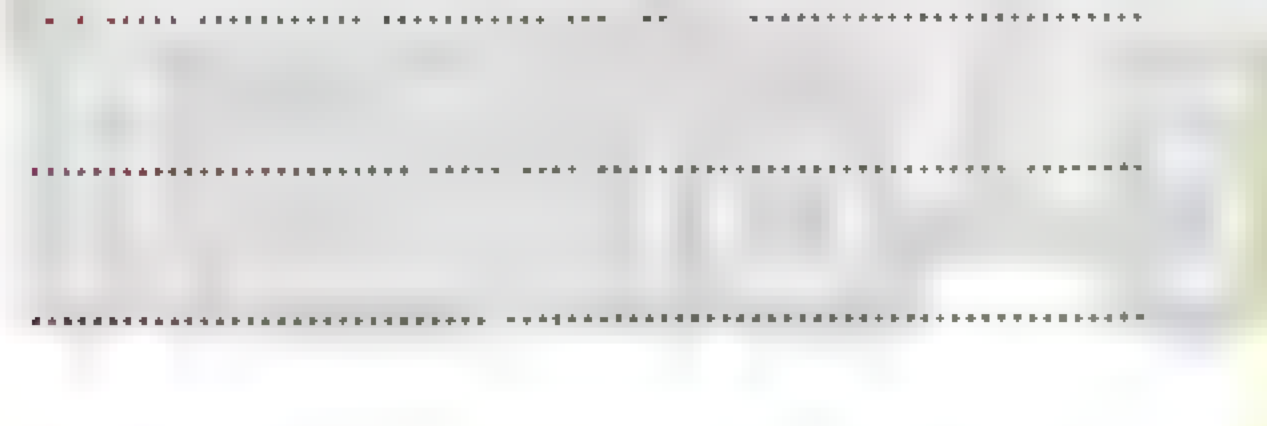
1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

bus - go - school - friends



....
....
....
....



9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

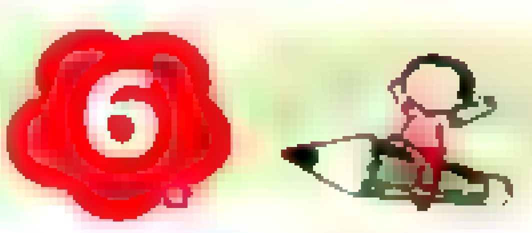
1- he s going to visit cairo

....

2- is english ahmed's favourite subject

....

Test 6



محافظة القليوبية
إدارة طوخ التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات


1. bread / present


2. draw / crawl


3. angry / hungry

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Hatem : It's so hot. I'm really thirsty.
Ahmed : Me, too. Let's get some juice.
Hatem : What ❶ .... of juice do you want?
Ahmed : ❷ .... juice, please.
Hatem : Uh-Oh! I don't have ❸ .... money.
Ahmed : Don't worry. Do you ❹ .... anything else?
Hatem : No, thanks.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	laugh	play	mountain	catch	....
2	spring	summer	run	fall	....
3	bus	car	taxi	haircut	....
4	Monday	Tuesday	Sunday	winter	....
5	green	red	drum	yellow	....



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- My sister makes the .... every day.
a. bed b. pets c. rubbish d. laundry

2- He likes to drink ....
a. lemonade b. chicken c. fries d. kebabs

3- Huda .... the pets last night.
a. feed b. feeds c. feeding d. fed

4- The library is across .. .. the music room.
a. on b. from c. in d. to

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Hany was busy on Saturday. In the morning, he played the piano and painted a picture. In the afternoon, he called his friends, Basma and Amr, and invited them for lunch. Amr roasted some chicken. They ate under a tree. They were very happy.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Hany invited them for dinner.		
2	Amr roasted some chicken.		
3	Hany was busy on Friday.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Where did they eat?

....

5- What did Hany do in the morning?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- will - He - a haircut - get.

....

2- a film - We're - see - going - to.

....

3- did - What - do - they?

....

4- for - What's - breakfast?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: **(4 marks)**

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: **(4 marks)**

Use the following guiding words.

sweep - help - do - make

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: **(2 marks)**

1- hatem and ahmed will go to alexandria

....

2- what s hany doing

....

Test 7



محافظة الشرقية
إدارة شرق الزقازيق التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نص الاستماع في آخر الامتحانات



1	beetle / puddle
2	three / mother
3	shop / chop

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع في آخر الامتحانات

Yasser : What's wrong, Ali?

Ali : I can't ❶ .... my camera.

Yasser : Did you ❷ .... for it in your bedroom?

Ali : Yes, I did.

Yasser : What ❸ .... is it?

Ali : It's green and yellow.

Yasser : Oh! There it is. It's ❹ .... to your school bag.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	water	candle	tea	juice	....
2	tiger	dress	skirt	shirt	....
3	saucer	cup	glass	meat	....
4	spring	eat	drink	sleep	....
5	banana	kebab	pineapple	orange	....



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... I need some water.

a. tall b. thin c. thirsty d. hungry

2- She's .... to read a book.

a. goes b. going c. go d. to go

3- She can't .... her bag.

a. found b. find c. finding d. finds

4- I'll .... a video.

a. read b. visit c. ride d. download

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Mona, Kareem, Huda, Samy and Heba are friends. Mona and Kareem like the summer. They want to go to the beach. They want to build sandcastles. Huda likes the fall. She wants to play in the leaves. Samy likes the spring. Heba likes the winter.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Huda wants to play in the leaves in the winter.		
2	Mona and Kareem want to go to the beach in the winter.		
3	Samy likes the fall.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What's Huda's favourite season?

....

5- What do Mona and Kareem want to do?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- laugh - jokes - Did - at - you?

....

2- you - Did - play - the - leaves - in?

....

3- and - likes - He - kebabs - spaghetti.

....

4- didn't - do - I - homework - my.

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)



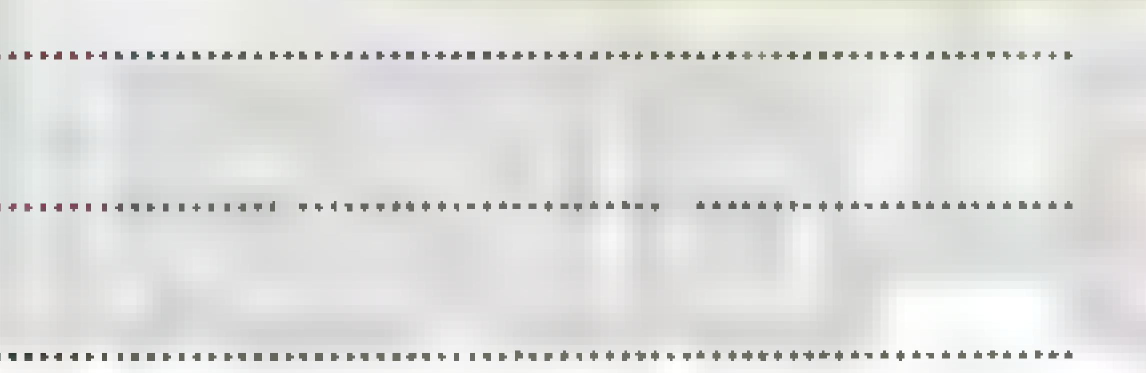


1. ....?
....
2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

school - big - walk - teacher



....

....

....

....



9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

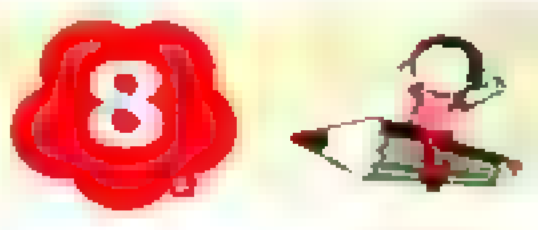
1- nabila s brother didn t see a show

....

2- did you play with mona and huda

....

Test 8

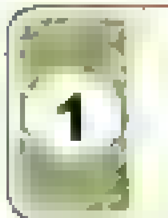


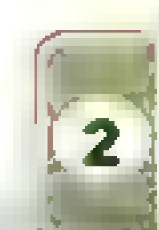
محافظة الغربية
إدارة شرق المحلة التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

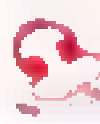

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات


1. bottle / puddle


2. tree / three


3. dish / fish

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Ali : What's your first name?
Samy : My first ❶ .... is Samy.
Ali : What's your ❷ .... subject?
Samy : I like English. It's fun.
Ali : Where ❸ .... the library?
Samy : It's next ❹ .... class1-B.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	orange	banana	apple	film	....
2	taxi	train	see	bus	....
3	tiger	lunch	cat	goat	....
4	fish	juice	lemonade	water	....
5	drink	boy	read	buy	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: (4 marks)

1- She .... tickets yesterday.
a. buy b. buys c. bought d. buying

2- We .... having spaghetti.
a. are b. has c. is d. does

3- Soha won a ....
a. tree b. prize c. plane d. price

4- Be .... ! The box is heavy.
a. watch b. problem c. help d. careful

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Mariam is in primary five. She likes kebabs and spaghetti. She likes drinking orange juice. Asmaa likes green salad and burger. They go to school on foot. They do homework at seven o'clock.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Mariam is in primary three.		
2	Mariam likes drinking orange juice.		
3	Asmaa likes kebabs and rice.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Mariam and Asmaa go to school?

....

5- When do they do homework?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- eating - What - you - are?

....

2- is - the - Where - library?

....

3- help - Let - me - ,mum - you.

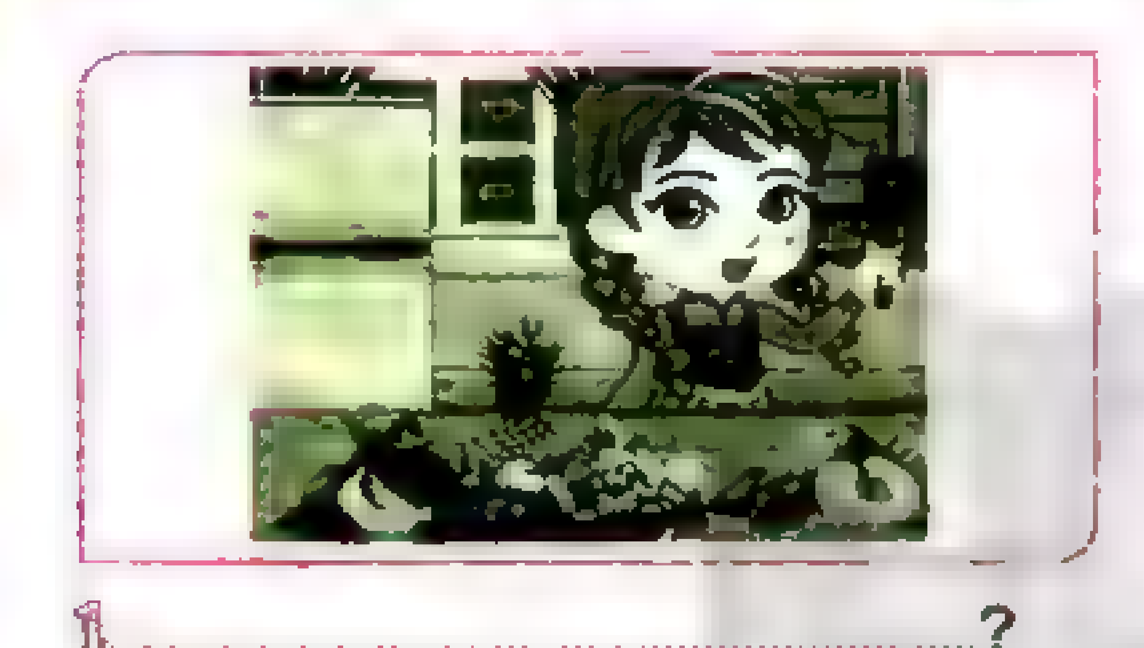
....

4- thirsty - I - really - am.

....



7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)





1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

beach - swim - play - happy

....

....

....

....



9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- mona doesn t water the plants on monday

....

2- did sameh visit his uncle ali

....



Test 9

محافظة الدقهلية
إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



1 kissed / played	2 walk / talk	3 climbed / weeded





2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Amany : Let me help you, Ola.
Ola : Thanks. Be ❶ .... The box is heavy.
Amany : No ❷ .... I'm strong.
Ola : Oh! Watch out. Are you ❸ .... ?
Amany : I think so.
Ola : What about your ❹ .... ?
Amany : It's not good.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	film	bicycle	taxi	bus	....
2	Friday	May	Monday	Tuesday	....
3	drink	see	juice	go	....
4	juice	lemonade	salad	water	....
5	rice	cheese	fish	mother	....



4 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box: **(4 marks)**

visit - breakfast - listened - home - climbed

Noha and Aya went to a camp. They woke up at six. They had ❶.................at seven. They had bread, beans and eggs for breakfast. Noha ❷............. to music. Aya ❸......................... a mountain. They went ❹.................... at eight.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: **(5 marks)**

Everyone in the family is going to do something. I'm going to download a video. My father is going to send an email. My mother is going to visit a friend. Hassan is going to buy ice cream. Mustafa is going to get a haircut. In the evening, we're going to see a film. We aren't going to listen to music.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	We're going to listen to music in the evening.		
2	My father is going to visit a friend.		
3	I'm going to download a video.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What's Mustafa going to do ?

....

5- When are we going to see a film?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: **(4 marks)**

1- breakfast - She - cooks - our.

....

2- did - go - Where - he - yesterday?

....

3- can - Where - get - I - popcorn?

....

4- played - cards - I - yesterday.

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

family - lunch - set - table

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- it s eight o clock now

....

2- are ali and mona at home

....

Test 10

محافظة البحيرة
إدارة دمنهور التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات


1. three / tree


2. flower / mother


3. slide / smile

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Woman : Excuse me. I'm looking for the museum, is it ❶ .... ?
Policeman : Not really. Turn right. It's ❷ .... the left.
Woman : ❸ .... you say turn right or turn left?
Pliceman : Turn right. It's on the left.
Woman : Thank you very ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	winter	spring	summer	apple	....
2	heavy	happy	strong	problem	....
3	maths	English	film	history	....
4	see	visit	building	download	....
5	spaghetti	lemonade	kebab	chicken	....



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... to visit my friend tomorrow.
a. meeting b. visiting c. building d. going

2- Did you say turn .... or turn left?
a. wrong b. favourite c. right d. left

3- .... is the library? - It's on the left.
a. Whose b. Where c. When d. Who

4- I will go skiing in the ....
a. morning b. winter c. night d. castle

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Yesterday was Friday. We didn't go to school on Friday. I went to the supermarket with my sister. My sister bought some fruit and vegetables. She also bought meat and rice. I bought orange juice and ice cream.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Yesterday was a holiday.		
2	I bought meat and rice.		
3	I went to the supermarket on Friday.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Where did you go on Friday?

....

5- What did your sister buy?

....

C Writing (14 marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- strong - No problem, - I'm.

....

2- a friend - visit - She - going to - is.

....

3- swept - floor - the - Who?

....

4- up - the clothes - hang - Did - she?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)





1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

dinner - bread - cheese - beefburger

....
....
....
....



9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- what s for breakfast, ayman

....

2- ashraf doesn t go to school on friday

....



Test 11

محافظة المنوفية
إدارة الباجور التعليمية

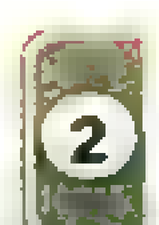
A Listening (12 Marks)

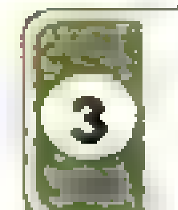
1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

 1. three / there

 2. roasted / walked

 3. thanks / brother

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Arwa : What are you eating?

Hazem : Fried ❶ ....

Arwa : Is it ❷ .... ?

Hazem : No, it isn't.

Arwa : What are you ❸ .... ?

Hazem : Orange ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	father	friend	sister	brother	....
2	wash	cook	clean	house	....
3	eleven	four	juice	three	....
4	beans	cheese	tickets	eggs	....
5	where	how	were	when	....

4 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box: (4 marks)

ripple - horse - plane - lake - turtle

Nada's uncle gave her a saddle. She rode her ❶............... . The ❷.. .... is full of ملئ بـ water. Nada jumped in it and made a ❸ .... She saw a ❹............... walking slowly.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Omar goes to school at seven o'clock. He goes with his friend Hany. They go on foot because the school isn't far. Omar is tall, but Hany is short. They are clever. Their teachers love them.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Omar goes to school by bus.		
2	Omar and Hany aren't clever.		
3	Their houses are near the school.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Why do they go to school on foot?

....

5- Is Hany tall?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- Samy - old - is - How?

....

2- you - Are - bed - making - the?

....

3- hungry - Yes, - I'm.

....

4- help - Let - you - me.

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

fall - pick - apples - leaves

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- i don t go to school on friday

....

2- how old are you mona

....

Test 12

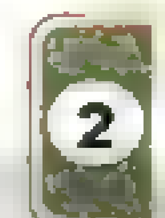
محافظة الإسكندرية
إدارة العامرية التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع في آخر الامتحانات


1. three / mother


2. chair / fish


3. plane / present

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع في آخر الامتحانات

Huda : Wake up, Mona!
Mona : What ❶ .... is it, Huda?
Huda : It's ❷ .... o'clock. It's time for breakfast.
Mona : What's for ❸ ....?
Huda : We're having beans and ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	one	car	five	six	....
2	juice	lemonade	salad	water	....
3	blue	red	black	cook	....
4	Friday	mother	Saturday	Sunday	....
5	book	pencil	pen	plane	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... I need juice.
a. hungry b. thirsty c. okay d. careful

2- What's your .... subject?
a. middle b. little c. roasted d. favourite

3- She .... tickets.
a. drank b. went c. bought d. chopped

4- Did they .... the tent?
a. clean b. cleaning c. cleaned d. cleans

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Last week, Ali's family went to the park. Ali's father bought tickets. They had lunch at three o'clock. They saw a show. Ali's brother won a prize. Ali's sister ate cotton candy. They went home by car. They were happy.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Last month, Ali's family went to the park.		
2	Ali's father bought tickets.		
3	Ali's sister ate cotton candy.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Who won a prize?

....

5- How did Ali's family go home?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- go to - How - school - you - do?

....

2 - money - have - Ashraf - doesn't - enough.

....

3- have - **Gad** - going to - is - lemonade.

....

4- **Where** - go - did - Ahmed - yesterday?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?

....

2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

taxi - take - visit - friend

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- what s mona's favourite animal

....

2- samir and yasser aren t tall

....

Test 13



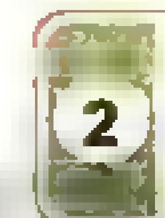
محافظة الفيوم
إدارة الفيوم التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

 1 invite / wait

 2 washed / studied

 3 dinner / butter

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Mayar : Did you help your mother at home?
Fatma : Yes, I did.
Mayar : ❶ .... did you do?
Fatma : I made my ❷ .... and swept the floor.
Mayar : And did you do the ❸ ....?
Fatma : No, I didn't. My ❹ .... did it.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	long	shorts	big	fat	....
2	English	science	lion	maths	....
3	four	six	eight	win	....
4	summer	winter	cat	spring	....
5	basketball	brother	volleyball	football	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: (4 marks)

1- Hisham .... two tickets to see the film.
a. saw b. drank c. bought d. laughed

2- He hangs up his ....
a. table b. clothes c. rubbish d. groceries

3- The children . ... going to the music room.
a. are b. has c. is d. have

4- I .... for my bag that I lost yesterday.
a. look b. looks c. looked d. looking

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Next Sunday, we will be busy. I'm going to send an email. Heba and Dina are going to see a show. They aren't going to buy an ice cream. They're going to have some lemonade. Adel and Ali are going to the beach. They're going to build a sandcastle. They aren't going to pick apples.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Heba and Dina are going to see a show.		
2	Next Monday, we will be busy.		
3	I'm going to send an email.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What are Adel and Ali going to do?

....

5- What are Heba and Dina going to have?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- early - woke - Ahmed - today - up.

....

2- you - go - Where - did - yesterday?

....

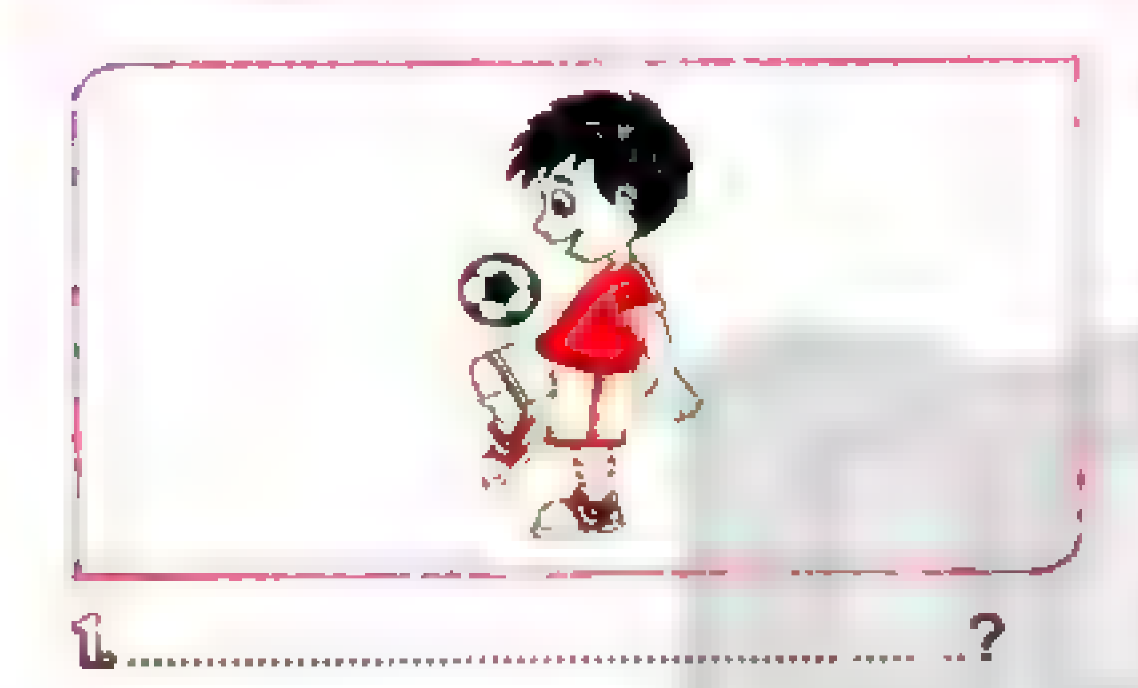
3- to - museum - the - go - Let's.

....

4- stories - Did - to - listen - you?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)



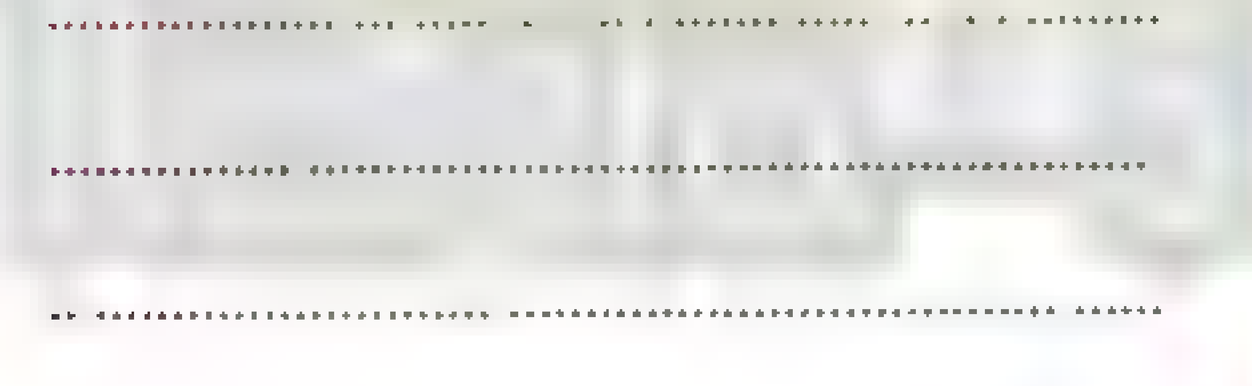


1. ....?
....
2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

family - breakfast - beans and eggs - delicious





....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- is hany going to visit his uncle next monday

....

2- basant s father is a teacher in giza

....

Tests

Test 14



محافظة بنى سويف
إدارة إهناسيا التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات


bottle
puddle


uncle
bicycle


saw
wow

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Hoda : Wake up, Mona.
Mona : What ❶ .... is it, Hoda?
Hoda : It's seven ❷ .... It's time for breakfast.
Mona : What's for ❸ .... ?
Hoda : We're having beans and ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	pots	dogs	forks	pans	....
2	juice	lemonade	salad	water	....
3	meat	cheese	three	bread	....
4	Friday	Monday	May	Tuesday	....
5	blue	red	green	juice	....



4 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box: (4 marks)

visited - busy - went - ate - played

Yara was ❶........................ on Friday. In the morning, she ❷........................ the piano. In the afternoon, she ❸........................ her uncle. She had lunch with him. In the evening, she ❹........................ home.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Sarah and Israa were classmates. Grandmother was old. Sarah and Israa swept the floor, took out the rubbish, made the bed, hung up the clothes and did the laundry for grandmother. Grandmother wanted to set the table for lunch, but Sarah and Israa did that for her. Grandmother was happy. She kissed Sarah and Israa. They kissed grandmother, too.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Sarah and Israa were pupils.		
2	Grandmother set the table for lunch.		
3	Grandmother was happy.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Sarah and Israa take out?

....

5- Why did grandmother kiss Sarah and Israa?

....

C- Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- Mona - stories - listens - to.

....

2- breakfast - She - cooks - our.

....

3- you - Did - say - right - turn?

....

4- did - What - do - they?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1- ....?

....

2- ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

hot - thirsty - drink - orange

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- where are ayman and ahmed going now

....

2- no i won t.

....

Test 15

محافظة المنيا
إدارة مغاغة التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

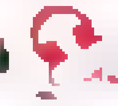

نص الاستماع في آخر الامتحانات


1 green / tree


2 kissed / called


3 uncle / bottle

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع في آخر الامتحانات

Reem : It's so hot. I want to drink juice.
Hoda : What ❶ .... of juice do you want?
Reem : ❷ .... juice, please.
Hoda : Do you ❸ .... enough money?
Reem : Oh! No, I don't.
Hoda : That's okay. It's my ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	Friday	Monday	May	Tuesday	....
2	wash	cook	orange	study	....
3	greeted	bread	waited	invited	....
4	Mona	mountain	Hoda	Nada	....
5	doctor	father	brother	sister	....

4 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box: (4 marks)

sister - help - set - beefburger - cucumbers

It's time for dinner at my house. My mother is going to ❶..................the table. I'm going to ❷...................... her. My father is going to have a ❸ .. .. My ❹................... ... is going to have kebabs. We are all happy.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Ahmed is in primary five. He likes kebab and spaghetti. He likes drinking lemonade. His brother Amr likes green salad and burger. They go to school by bus. They do their homework at seven o'clock.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Ahmed is in primary six.		
2	Ahmed likes drinking lemonade.		
3	Amr likes green salad and burger.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Ahmed and Amr go to school?

....

5- When do Ahmed and Amr do their homework?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- going - She's - to - visit - a friend.

....

2- are - you - What - eating?

....

3- bus - riding - the - are - They.

....

4- you - say - turn - right - Did?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

go to the beach - leaves - plant flowers - sandcastle

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- i met heba and mona yesterday

....

2- what s mona's favourite animal

....

Test 16



محافظة أسيوط
إدارة ساحل سليم التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

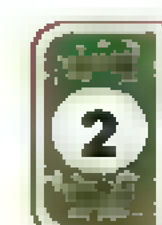
1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات



1. strong / think



2. spaghetti / pineapple



3. spoon / sneeze

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

A : Did you help your mother at home?
B : Yes, I did.
A : ❶ .... did you do?
B : I made my bed and ❷ .... the floor.
A : Did you ❸ .... the laundry?
B : No, I ❹ ....

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	taxi	bicycle	film	bus	....
2	bread	mother	father	brother	....
3	drink	see	juice	go	....
4	baked	win	called	cleaned	....
5	rice	cheese	fish	spoon	....



4 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box: (4 marks)

good - play - breakfast - are - drink

It's seven o'clock in the morning. It's time for ❶ .... I'm very hungry. That smells ❷ .... We ❸ .... going to have beans and eggs. That's my favourite! I'm going to ❹ .... orange juice, too.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

One day Hager and her friends went to the park. They ate breakfast at eight o'clock. They ate bread, jam, eggs, apples and bananas. Hager drank milk. Her friends drank orange juice. They played cards. They also saw a show.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Hager and her friends went to school.		
2	Hager's friends drank apple juice.		
3	Hager and her friends ate breakfast at 8:00.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Hager and her friends play ?

....

5- Where did Hager and her friends have breakfast?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- She's - visit - going - to - a friend.

....

2- did - What - do - they?

....

3- to - listens - Mona - stories.

....

4- your - What's - animal - favourite?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

family - lunch - lobster - juice

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- it s hot in aswan

....

2- what is mona s favourite colour

....

محافظة سوهاج
إدارة البلينا التعليمية

Test 17



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

1. bottle / puddle
2. weeded / dusted
3. small / wall

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Rana : Good afternoon, Ahmed.
Ahmed : Good afternoon, Rana.
Rana : It's too hot today. Are you ❶ ....?
Ahmed : Yes, I'm. Let's get some ❷ ....
Rana : What kind of juice do you ❸ ....?
Ahmed : ❹ .... juice, please.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	blue	red	juice	green	....
2	kebab	salad	beefburger	lemonade	....
3	dusted	greet	planted	waited	....
4	clean	cook	climb	cards	....
5	pots	dogs	forks	pans	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- It's time .... breakfast.
a. in b. for c. at d. with

2- She didn't .... a prize.
a. win b. won c. wins d. winning

3- They took .... the rubbish.
a. at b. on c. of d. out

4- She is going to .... a friend.
a. visit b. visited c. visits d. visiting

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Yesterday was Friday. Salma didn't go to school on Friday. She went to the supermarket with her mother. Mother bought some vegetables, fruit, rice, spaghetti and meat. Salma bought French fries and orange juice.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Salma went to school yesterday.		
2	Salma went to the cinema with her mother.		
3	Mother bought vegetables and fruit.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Where did Salma go?

....

5- What did Salma buy ?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- Amr - What - did - roast?

....

2- up - clothes - He - the - hung.

....

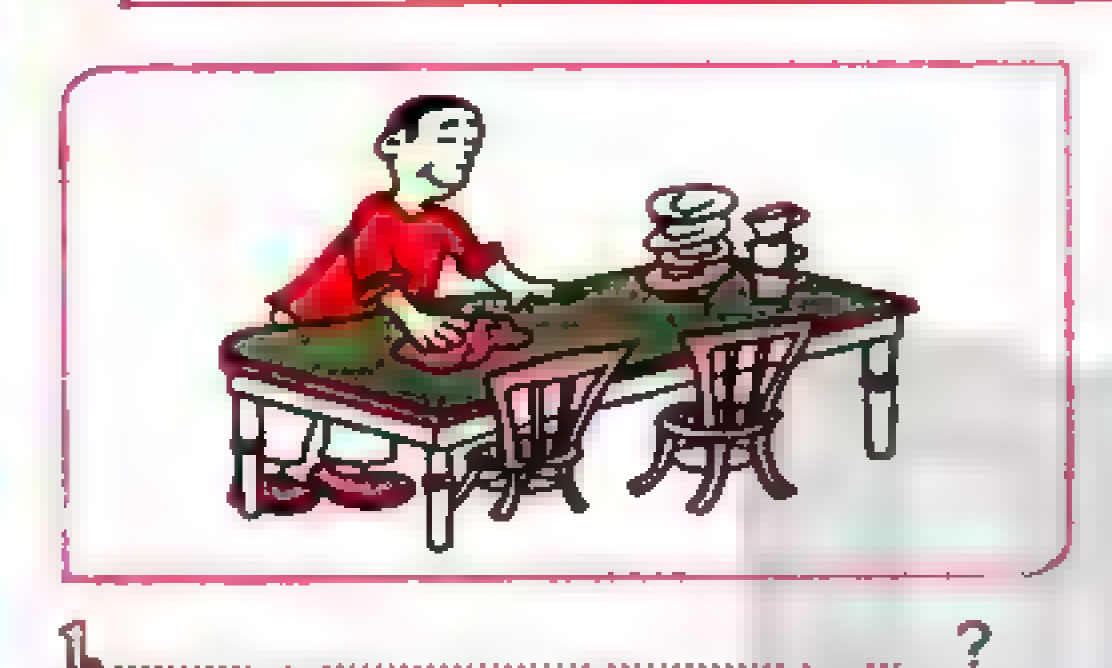
3- have - What - you - are - going to?



4- We're - eggs - beans - and - having.

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)





1. ....? 2. ....?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

park - family - Monday - happy



....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- i visited enas and maha yesterday

....

2- does reda live in alexandria

....

Test 18



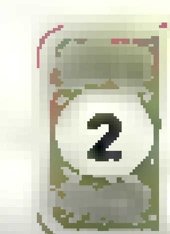
محافظة قنا
إدارة قوص التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

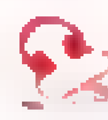

نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات


1. bottle / little


2. chop / shop


3. wall / crawl

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Ramy : Excuse me. Can you help me?

Ali : Yes, I ❶ ....

Ramy : Where's the ❷ ....?

Ali : Go ❸ .... It's across from the music room.

Ramy : Is it near the ❹ .... room?

Ali : Yes, it is.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	film	taxi	bus	bicycle	....
2	climb	walked	washed	baked	....
3	Friday	May	Sunday	Tuesday	....
4	beans	cheese	rice	tickets	....
5	blue	green	car	red	....

4 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box: (4 marks)

email - is - film - are - wash

My sister and I are at home. I'm going to send an ❶ .... My sister is going to ❷ .... the pans and pots. Then, she's going to see a ❸ .... In the evening, we ❹ .... going to visit our uncle.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Last week, I was at a campsite with my family. We had breakfast at 7 o'clock. My mother washed the pots. My sister cleaned the tent. I climbed the mountain with my father. In the evening we played cards and we listened to my grandfather's stories.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	I was at the park last week.		
2	My mother cleaned the tent.		
3	We had breakfast at 7 o'clock.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did my mother do?

....

5- When did we play cards?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- you - Did - cards - play?

....

2- want - don't - I - spaghetti.

....

3- he - 's - What - doing?

....

4- are - bus - the - They - riding.

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

boys - play - kites - garden

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- adel and mona aren t tall

....

2- what s heba's favourite colour

....

Test 19



محافظة مرسى مطروح
إدارة سيوة التعليمية

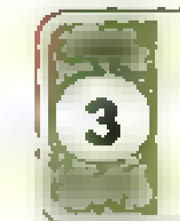
A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات


1. puddle / butter


2. burger / turtle


3. greeted / chopped

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)


نص الاستماع فى آخر الامتحانات

Sarah : Hello, Mona.
Mona : Hello, Sarah.
Sarah : What ❶ .... is it?
Mona : It's twelve o'clock.
Sarah : ❷ .... hungry. What about you?
Mona : Me, too. What do you ❸ .... to eat?
Sarah : Let's ❹ .... some French fries.

B Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	red	cat	blue	yellow	....
2	watched	cleaned	washed	play	....
3	put	what	sweep	like	....
4	beans	tickets	cheese	eggs	....
5	Friday	Monday	May	Tuesday	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- She .... pick apples in the summer.
a. is   b. will   c. have   d. are

2- She's .... to ride the bus.
a. go   b. going   c. goes   d. went

3- What's your .... subject?
a. little   b. many   c. favourite   d. wrong

4- She .... tickets.
a. bought   b. drank   c. ate   d. sliced

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

We are at the amusement park. My brother and sister are going on a ride. My friend Hossam is having pizza for lunch. I want to buy a ticket for the show. My sister won a prize. She wants to eat cotton candy. My parents took pictures of us.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	My brother is having pizza for lunch.		
2	I want to see a show.		
3	My brother wants to eat cotton candy.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Where are we?

....

5- Who took pictures?

....

C Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4 marks)

1- breakfast - She - cooks - our.

....

2- did - What - do - they?

....

3- She's - visit - going to - a friend.

....

4- Where - does - he - a haircut - get?

....

7 Look and write a question and its answer: (4 marks)

1. ....?
....

2. ....?
....

8 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (4 marks)

Use the following guiding words.

show - drink - cotton candy - take pictures

....
....
....
....

9 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

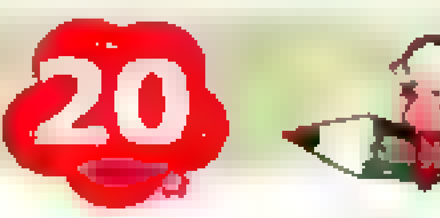
1- what did ali and samy do

....

2- no they didn t

....

Test 20



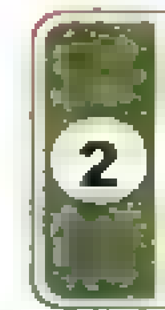
محافظة شمال سيناء
الازهر الشريف

A : Listening (12 Marks)

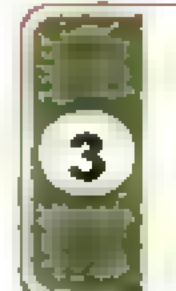
1 Read and circle the word with the different sound: (3 marks)



1. father / mother / three



2. walked / roasted / wanted



3. this / thank / thin

2 Read and complete: (2 marks)

Sami : Hello! How ❶ .... you?
Noha : I'm ❷ .... thanks.
Sami : Where are you going?
Noha : I'm going to school.
Sami : How ❸ .... you go to school?
Noha : I go to school by ❹ ....

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (4 marks)

					Answer
1	taxi	bicycle	film	bus	....
2	bread	mother	father	brother	....
3	rice	cheese	fish	mother	....
4	quiet	number	careful	strong	....

4 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Everyone in the family is going to do something. I'm going to download a video. My father is going to send an email. My mother is going to visit a friend. Hassan is going to buy ice

cream. Mustafa is going to get a haircut. In the evening, we're going to see a film. We aren't going to listen to music.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	We're going to listen to music in the evening.		
2	My father is going to visit a friend.		
3	I'm going to download a video.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What's Mustafa going to do ?

....

5- When are we going to see a film?

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (3 marks)

1- My - set - the table - lunch - sister - for.

....

2- watch TV - Did - at - you - home?

....

3- Maha - out - the - took - rubbish.

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (2 marks)

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- it s hot in aswan

....



Tests

Test 1 Sample Test

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
bottle / puddle	uncle / bicycle	saw / Wow

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Hoda : Wake up, Mona.
Mona : What ❶ .... is it, Hoda?
Hoda : It's seven ❷ .... It is time for breakfast.
Mona : What's for ❸ ....?
Hoda : We are having beans and ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 pots	dogs	forks	pans	....
2 juice	lemonade	salad	water	....
3 breakfast	cheese	three	bread	....
4 Friday	Monday	May	Tuesday	....
5 blue	red	juice	green	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: (4 marks)

ate - cooked - bought - dish - fish

My mother has a fish. Father likes fish. Mother puts the fish on a ❶.................. . The dish is full of crabs. She❷.................. lunch for father. Father❸.................. bread. He ❹.................. fish and crabs. Mother brought a spoon to have rice. Fish was my mother's favourite.



Test 1

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Sara and Israa were classmates زملاء دراسة. Grandmother was old. Sara and Israa swept the floor, took out the rubbish, made the bed, hung up clothes and did the laundry for grandmother. Grandmother wanted to set the table for lunch, but Sara and Israa did that for her. Grandmother was happy. She kissed Sara and Israa. They kissed grandmother.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Sara and Israa were pupils. (طلاب)		
2 Grandmother set the table for lunch.		
3 Grandmother was happy.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Sara and Israa take out?

....

5- Why did grandmother kiss Sara and Israa?

....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- Mona - stories - listens - to. ....

2- breakfast - She - cooks - our. ....

3- you - Did - say - right - turn? ....

4- did - What - do - they? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- i met Heba and Mona yesterday ....

2- is Samy going to come on monday? ....



Test 2 Sample Test

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
three / tree	flower / mother	slide / smile

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Bosy : It's so hot. I'd like to drink something.

Amr : What will you ❶ ....?

Bosy : ❷ .... juice, please.

Amr : Do you want ❸ ....?

Bosy : Yes, ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	kebab	salad	beefburger	lemonade	....
2	class	teacher	lobster	board	....
3	mountain	Mona	Ali	Hoda	....
4	greeted	bread	waited	invited	....
5	where	how	were	when	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... I need juice.
   a hungry   b thirsty   c okay   d careful

2- What's your .... subject?
   a middle   b little   c roasted   d favourite

3- She's .... to ride the bus.
   a meeting   b going   c taking   d eating

4- She .... tickets.
   a drank   b went   c bought   d chopped

Test 2

5 **Read the passage and answer the questions:** (5 marks)

Norhan's favourite subject is English. She likes to read English in the library. She thinks that English is fun. In summer, she goes to the library with her friend Bosbos. They help their friends in the library. They put away books, sweep the floor and water the library flowers. They like to go to the library three times a week.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Norhan's favourite subject is English.		
2 Norhan goes to the library alone. (بمفردها)		
3 Norhan likes to read English in the library.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Norhan and Bosbos help their friends? ....

5- Why does Norhan like English? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** (6 marks)

1- She's - visit - going - to - a friend.

....

2- the - riding - They - are - bus.

....

3- Hany - Does - the board - draw - on?

....

4- are - What - going - you - to have?

....

7 **Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:** (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 **Punctuate the following:** (2 marks)

1- Ahmed met Mary and sameer yesterday ....

2- What's mona s favourite animal? ....



Test 3 Sample Test

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
chop shop	better butter	crawl scrawl

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

A : Excuse me. I'm looking for the railway ❶ .... Is it far ?

B : Turn right. It is ❷ .... the left.

A : Did you say turn right or turn ❸ ....?

B : Turn right. It is on the left.

A : ❹ .... you very much.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 father	uncle	sister	brother	....
2 wash	cook	orange	study	....
3 picture	lunch	juice	rice	....
4 camp	home	pot	tent	....
5 beans	tickets	cheese	eggs	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: (4 marks)

yard - busy - lazy - hanging - putting

Everyone is ❶ .... today. Mona's grandmother is ❷ .... up the clothes. The pets are in the ❸ .... eating their food. Mona's brother is doing the laundry. Mona is in her bedroom making her bed. Mona's brother is ❹ .... away the groceries.

Test 3

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Rehab and her sister Sara had breakfast very early in the morning. After breakfast, they had orange juice. Then Rehab swept the floor. When their friend Laila came, they went out. Laila wanted to have a haircut. In the evening, Rehab and Sara went back home and Laila gave them two stories to read. The stories were nice.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Rehab and Sara had juice in the evening.		
2 Sara swept the floor.		
3 Laila went out with Sara and Rehab.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Laila give Rehab and Sara? ....

5- Why did they go out? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- will - She - a haircut - have. ....

2- for - looking - I'm - museum - the. ....

3- are - you - What - eating? ....

4- Reem's - What's - animal - favourite? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- Adel and mona aren t tall.

....

2- is English Ahmed's favourite subject.

....



Test 4

محافظة القاهرة

إدارة الوايلى التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
bottle puddle	uncle bicycle	flower mother

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

A : Excuse me. I'm looking for the railway station. ❶ .... it far?

B : Turn right. It is ❷ .... the left.

A : Did you say turn right or turn ❸ ....?

B : Turn right. It is on the left.

A : ❹ .... you very much.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 Friday	Monday	May	Tuesday	....
2 blue	red	juice	green	....
3 where	were	how	when	....
4 kebab	salad	beefburger	lemonade	....
5 wash	cook	orange	study	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... I need juice.
(a) hungry (b) thirsty (c) okay (d) careful

2- What's your .... subject?
(a) middle (b) little (c) roasted (d) favourite

3- Did you .... the tent yesterday?
(a) cleaned (b) cleans (c) clean (d) cleaning

4- They .... lunch at home yesterday.
(a) had (b) has (c) have (d) having



Test 4

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Heba's favourite subject is English. She likes to read English in the library. She thinks that English is fun. In summer, she goes to the library with her friend Mona. They help their friends in the library. They put away books, sweep the floor and water the library flowers. They like to go to the library three times every week.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Heba's favourite subject is English.		
2 Heba goes to the library alone بمفرده.		
3 Heba likes to read English in the library.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Heba and Mona help their friends?

....

5- Why does Heba like English?

....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- the - riding - They - are - bus. ....

2- breakfast - She - cooks - our. ....

3- are - you - What - eating? ....

4- did - she - do - What ? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- I met heba yesterday ....

2- is Samy going to come on Monday ....

Tests

Test 5

محافظة القاهرة
إدارة المستقبل التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
cheese sneeze	slide smile	flower mother

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Ali : Excuse me. I'm looking for the museum. Is it ❶ ....?
Ahmed : Yes, it is.
Ali : How do I ❷ .... there?
Ahmed : By ❸ ....
Ali : Thank you very much.
Ahmed : You are ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 taxi	bicycle	film	bus	....
2 bread	mother	father	brother	....
3 drink	see	juice	go	....
4 rice	cheese	fish	choir	....
5 park	cinema	bus	museum	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... I want to eat.
(a) hungry (b) thirsty (c) strong (d) angry

2- What is your .... subject?
(a) middle (b) painted (c) roasted (d) favourite

3- She .... some tickets last week.
(a) buys (b) buy (c) bought (d) buying

4- Let's .... some juice.
(a) eat (b) get (c) slide (d) cry

Test 5

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Eman is in primary five. She likes kebab and spaghetti. She likes drinking orange juice. Mona likes green salad and burger. They go to school by bus. They do homework at seven o'clock.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Eman is in primary two.		
2 Eman likes drinking orange juice.		
3 Mona likes kebab and rice.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Eman and Mona go to school?..........

5- When do they do homework?..........

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- don't - I - enough - have - money.

....

2- for - It's - breakfast - time.

....

3- she - floor - Did - the - sweep?

....

4- do - you - How - go - school - to?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- Adel and mona aren t tall. ....

2- What s Ahmed going to have ....



Test 6 محافظة الجيزة

إدارة منشأة القناطر التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
build pick	great straight	fried tried

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Dalia : Hello, Jana.

Jana : Hi! Dalia.

Dalia : Are you ❶ ……………………………, Jana?

Jana : Yes, I ❷ ……………………………

Dalia : What do you want to ❸ ……………………………?

Jana : I want ❹ ……………………………

Dalia : Me, too.

Jana : That's good.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 winter	English	Arabic	maths	……………
2 grandmother	swimmer	sister	father	……………
3 chicken	meat	rice	water	……………
4 happy	sad	good	salad	……………
5 eat	talk	girl	sleep	……………

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- What …………… Ali going to do?

a is b will c are d am

2- Mona's mother is doing the …………… .

a clothes b bed c laundry d table

3- He …………… eat fish yesterday.

a doesn't b don't c wasn't d didn't



Test 6

4- What .... of juice do you want?

ⓐ pineapple ⓑ kind ⓒ cotton ⓓ time

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Hoda is eleven years old. She is in primary six. Her father is a doctor. Her mother is a housewife ربة منزل. Hoda always helps her mother in the kitchen. Now, they are cooking rice and meat. Her father helps her with her homework.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Hoda is in primary two.		
2 Her father works in a hospital.		
3 She helps her mother.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How old is Hoda?..

5- How many people are in Hoda's family?..

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- I - music - to - listen - don't.

....

2- you - now - Are - really - hungry?

....

3- the pets - like - to - We - feed.

....

4- What - for - Is - Ali - looking?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- What s your favourite book ....

2- my uncle lives in aswan. ....

Tests

Test 1 محافظة القليوبية

إدارة بنها التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
dusted / roasted	jaw / paw	beetle / candle

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Omar : Let me help you, Dad.
Dad : It's heavy. ❶ .... you carry it?
Omar : No ❷ .... I'm strong.
Dad : Are you ❸ .... ?
Omar : Yes, Dad.
Dad : OK. Thank you so ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 summer	Saturday	winter	fall	....
2 walked	baked	clean	called	....
3 class	maths	music	English	....
4 fish	cheese	meat	tea	....
5 nice	cold	cleaning	thirsty	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- He was so happy. He went on a ....
a prize b show c ride d kite

2- When did Ali .... the tent?
a cleans b cleaned c cleaning d clean

3- Noha is eating barbecued ....
a salad b chicken c burger d fish

4- .... you going to send an e-mail?
a Do b Is c Are d Did

Test 7

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

I'm Farid. I'm thirteen years old. My favourite season is summer. It's hot in summer. So we go to the beach. We go by train. We sit on the beach and build sandcastles. We can swim and play volleyball.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Farid doesn't like the summer.		
2 He goes to the beach in the spring.		
3 He builds sandcastles.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do they go to the beach? ....

5- What can they do on the beach? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- In - He - flowers - plants - spring - the. ....

2- right - you - Did - say - turn? ....

3- the - My - clothes - up - mother - hung. ....

4- wash - When - he - does - car - the? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- let me help you Mona. ....

2- Is english Ramy s favourite subject? ....



Test 8 محافظة المنوفية

إدارة أشمون التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
sheep ship	Nile middle	better butter

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Man : Excuse me. I'm looking for the zoo. Is ❶ .... far?
Woman : Walk two blocks and turn left. It's on the right.
Man : Did you ❷ .... turn left or turn right?
Woman : Turn left. It's on the right.
Man : ❸ .... you very much.
Woman : You are welcome. ❹ .... fun.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	I	bee	she	they	....
2	summer	winter	spring	fish	....
3	tickets	beans	eggs	apples	....
4	blue	red	juice	green	....
5	cook	make	tiger	climb	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- What did she .... ?
 a cooked b cooks c cooking d cook

2- I'm .... to have burger.
 a go b went c going d goes

3- What kind of .... do you want? - Green salad, please.
 a meat b juice c salad d fish

4- He.................... the bed yesterday.
 a made b ate c played d watched



Test (8)

(5) **Read the passage and answer the questions:** (5 marks)

We are a small family. I have got one brother and one sister. We live in Cairo. We help our mother at home. I set the table. My brother does the laundry. My sister hangs up the clothes.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	My sister hangs up the clothes.		
2	My father sets the table.		
3	We help our mother at home.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What does his brother do? ....

5- Where does the small family live? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

(6) **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** (6 marks)

1- It's - room - across from - the - music. ....

2- are - What - eating - you? ....

3- the - riding - They - are - bus. ....

4- are - What - going - to - you - have? ....

(7) **Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:** (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

(8) **Punctuate the following:** (2 marks)

1- what are you doing, Sama ....

2- How can mazen go to Giza ....



Tests

محافظة الشرقية

إدارة كفر صقر التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

① Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
slide drum	saddle bottle	eraser paper

② Listen and complete: (6 marks)

A : Wake up, Mona.
B : What ❶ .... is it?
A : It's seven ❷ .... It's time for breakfast.
B : What's ❸ .... breakfast?
A : We are ❹ .... beans and eggs.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

③ Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	kebab	salad	beefburger	lemonade	....
2	green	teacher	blue	white	....
3	winter	summer	fall	juice	....
4	Sunday	cow	dog	tiger	....
5	where	how	are	when	....

④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- What .... you going to do tomorrow?
a am   b is   c are   d does

2- .... he listen to stories? - Yes, he did.
a Did   b Do   c Does   d Are

3- They .... tickets yesterday.
a bought   b buy   c buys   d buying

4- I am .... I need water.
a hungry   b thirsty   c okay   d wet

Test 9

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Heba usually gets up at half past six. She brushes her teeth. She has breakfast with her family. She walks to school at 7.30. Her school is near her home. She comes to school early. Her favourite subject is English. She comes back home at 2.30 with her brother.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Heba has breakfast in the morning.		
2 Heba goes to school on foot.		
3 She comes back at two o'clock.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What's Heba's favourite subject? ....

5- What time does Heba get up? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- are - What - you - eating? ....

2- look - help - I'll - for - to - you - them. ....

3- French - is - eat - He - to - going - fries. ....

4- help - Can - you - me? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- are Dina and Tamer at school ....

2- Sahar didn t help at home ....



Tests

محافظة الغربية

إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
beetle	small	listened
puddle	shawl	played

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Sama : Hello. How ❶ .... you?

Noha : I'm ❷ ...., thanks.

Sama : Where are you going?

Noha : I'm going to ❸ ....

Sama : ❹ .... do you go to school?

Noha : I go to school by bus.

B: Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	French fries	beefburgers	peppers	present	....
2	finger	ruler	marker	eraser	....
3	drank	won	play	took	....
4	English	blue	Arabic	maths	....
5	museum	cinema	welcome	library	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: (4 marks)

taking - lunch - going - amusement - ticket

We are at the ❶ .... park. My sister and brother are ❷ .... on a ride. My friend Hossam is having pizza for ❸ .... I want to buy a ❹ .... for the show. My father took pictures of us.



Test 10

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Mona and Hoda are sisters. Their mother was sick. The two girls swept the floor, took out the rubbish, hung up the clothes and did the laundry. Their mother wanted to set the table for lunch, but Mona and Hoda did that for her. The two girls helped their mother and kissed her. Their mother kissed them, too.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Mona's mother set the table for lunch.		
2 Hoda's mother was sick.		
3 The two girls didn't sweep the floor.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Why did Mona and Hoda help their mother? ....

5- What did Mona's mother want to do? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- have - I - money - Uh-oh! - don't - enough.

....

2- lunch - Did - yesterday - cook - you?

....

3- she - going - What's - to have?

....

4- treat - That's - It's - okay. - my.

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- What did nabil do on Saturday ....

2- adel and Heba don t like kebab. ....



Test 11 محافظة البحيرة

إدارة حوش عيسى التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
sheep ship	walk talk	fish dish

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Tarek : It's so hot. I like to drink something.

Samir : ❶ .... will you drink?

Tarek : ❷ .... juice, please.

Samir : Do you want ❸ .... ?

Tarek : Yes, ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	father	spring	sister	brother	....
2	wash	cook	orange	study	....
3	bread	chicken	juice	rice	....
4	camp	home	pot	school	....
5	beans	tickets	cheese	eggs	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- What's .... breakfast today?

a in b at c for d with

2- I'm .... I need some juice.

a hungry b thirsty c careful d okay

3- What .... you going to do?

a are b is c am d was

4- I .... the Pyramids yesterday.

a visiting b visited c visit d visits



Test 11

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Ahmed is in primary five. He likes kebab and spaghetti. He likes drinking lemonade. His brother Amr likes green salad and burger. They go to school by bus. They do their homework at seven o'clock.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Ahmed is in primary six.		
2 Ahmed likes drinking lemonade.		
3 Amr likes green salad and burger.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- How do Ahmed and Amr go to school? ....

5- When do Ahmed and Amr do their homework? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- She's - visit - going - to - a friend.

....

2- the - riding - They - are - bus.

....

3- Hany - Does - the board - draw - on?

....

4- are - What - going - you - to have?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- did Ali camp in Alexandria ....

2- adel and mona aren't tall. ....



Tests

Test 12 محافظة الاسكندرية

إدارة المنتزة التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
cooked / looked	fixed / mixed	talk / walk

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Hoda : What's your ❶ .... subject?
Heba : I ❷ .... maths.
Hoda : Me, too. It's❸................................
Heba : What ❹ .... are you in?
Hoda : I'm in class 5B.
Heba : OK. Nice to meet you.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	play	plane	taxi	car	....
2	camp	zoo	house	beans	....
3	blue	school	red	black	....
4	fun	look	run	ride	....
5	where	when	who	please	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I can download a ....
a video b taxi c bus d train

2- He .... a haircut every month.
a get b gets c getting d got

3- .... you going to sleep?
a Did b Is c Are d Does

4- Walk .... blocks. It's on the right.
a two b to c too d so



Test 12

5 **Read the passage and answer the questions:** (5 marks)

Amar did many things yesterday. In the morning he weeded the garden with his sister. He invited his friends for lunch. They roasted chicken in the afternoon. They washed the dishes. They had a good time.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Amar fed the pets.		
2 His mother baked bread.		
3 Amar weeded the garden in the morning.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Amar and his friends do after lunch?

....

5- Did they have meat for lunch? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** (6 marks)

1- It - time - is - What ? ....

2- two - Walk - left - blocks - turn - and. ....

3- Ali - yesterday - did - What - do? ....

4- up - at - o'clock - I - get - seven. ....

7 **Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:** (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 **Punctuate the following:** (2 marks)

1- he gets up at six o'clock ....

2- did you forget the groceries Ramy? ....

Test 13 محافظة الاسماعيلية

إدارة الاسماعيلية التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
bottle beetle	sheep cheese	lobster blister

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

A : What are you ❶ .... ?

B : I'm making the ❷ ....

A : Can I ❸ .... you?

B : No, thank you, I can do it by myself.

A : Would you like some tea?

B : Yes, ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 seven	four	river	one	....
2 winter	juice	summer	fall	....
3 stories	wash	watch	go	....
4 he	spaghetti	she	they	....
5 tall	homework	fat	thin	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: (4 marks)

fed - rubbish - did - hung - away

Last Friday was a busy day. My brother put ❶........ the groceries. My sister took out the ❷........ I ❸........ up the clothes. My mother ❹........ the laundry. My father set the table.

Test 13

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Ahmed was busy on Saturday. In the morning, he played the piano. He called his friends Basma and Amr and invited them for lunch. Amr roasted some chicken. They ate under a tree. In the afternoon. Ahmed, Basma and Amr weeded the garden.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Ahmed invited Basma and Amr for lunch.		
2 Ahmed played cards in the morning.		
3 They ate under a flower.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Ahmed, Basma and Amr do in the afternoon?

....

5- What did Amr roast? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- she - did - What - do?. ....

2- Noha - making - bed - the - is. ....

3- have - What's - going - he - to? ....

4- don't - I - enough - have - money. ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

ZOO

....

....

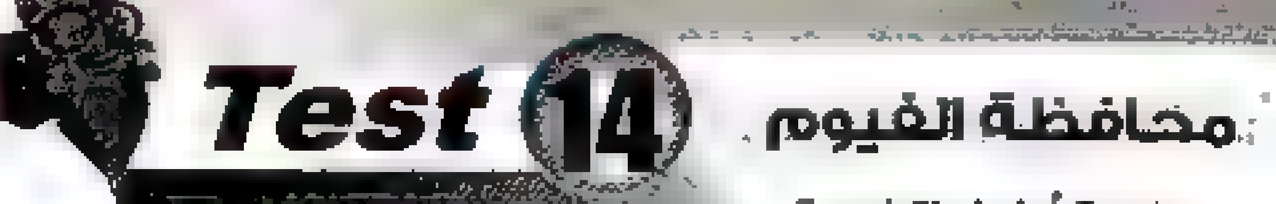
....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- do Mona and huda like English? ....

2- let s go to the cinema on Monday. ....



Tests

Test 14

محافظة الفيوم

إدارة أطسا التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
watch / wash	drink / drank	called / waited

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Ali : Hello, Alia.

Alia : Hello, Ali.

Ali : Did you ❶ .... breakfast?

Alia : Yes, I ❷ ....

Ali : What's ❸ .... breakfast?

Alia : We're having ❹ .... and eggs.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	buy	see	win	fed	....
2	kebab	lemonade	chicken	beefburger	....
3	blister	mother	father	sister	....
4	lemonade	fish	tea	milk	....
5	red	summer	spring	winter	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I .... go skiing in summer.

a do b won't c am d has

2- Adel .... walk, but he can crawl.

a can b is c can't d doesn't

3- Ayman and Amira saw a ....

a shower b show c sure d see

4- I'm going to download a ....

a vet b vase c video d letter



Test 14

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Amal wanted to visit the museum. The man told her how to go there. He told her to turn left. The museum was on the right. She thanked him and he said, "You're welcome".

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Amal wanted to go to the park.		
2 The man didn't help her.		
3 She thanked the man.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Where did Amal want to go? ....

5- What did the man tell her? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- looking - I'm - the - for - museum. ....

2- do - she - What - did - , mum? ....

3- candy - didn't - cotton - He - eat. ....

4- want - What - juice - do - you - kind of? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- let's get some juice, Amira ....

2- may I get a drink of water ....



A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
uncle / bicycle	flower / mother	tree / see

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Son : May I ❶ .... you, mum?

Mother : Yes, be ❷ ....

Son : Don't worry. I'm ❸ ....

Mother : Watch out! ❹ .... you okay?

Son : I think so.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	listen	get	played	draw	....
2	mother	dinner	father	sister	....
3	vet	arm	leg	eye	....
4	juice	water	milk	apple	....
5	school	home	bed	park	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- What kind of juice .... he want?
 a does b do c am d are

2- It's so .... I'm really thirsty.
 a old b cold c hot d young

3- She's going to .... a friend.
 a buy b visit c take d send

4- Where .... the library?
 a were b is c do d are



Test 15

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Ahmed is my brother. He is a good boy. He wakes up at seven o'clock in the morning. He helps his mother cook breakfast. In the afternoon, he washes the pots and pans. He likes listening to stories. We play cards after dinner every day.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Ahmed wakes up at nine o'clock.		
2 Ahmed helps his mother.		
3 Ahmed likes listening to music.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What does Ahmed do in the afternoon?

....

5- When do they play cards?

....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- me - you - Let - , mum - help. ....

2- for - looking - I'm - museum - the. ....

3- you - Did - say - right - turn? ....

4- lunch - Did - you - cook? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- what is he reading ....

2- it's time for breakfast ....



Test 16

محافظة المنيا
إدارة سمالوط التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
dusted roasted	jaw paw	beetle candle

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Omar : Let me help you, Dad.
Dad : It's heavy. ❶ .... you carry it?
Omar : No ❷ .... I'm strong.
Dad : Are you ❸ ....?
Omar : Yes, Dad.
Dad : OK. Thank you so ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	summer	Saturday	winter	fall	....
2	walked	baked	clean	called	....
3	class	maths	music	English	....
4	fish	cheese	meat	tea	....
5	nice	cold	cleaning	thirsty	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- He was so happy. He went on a ....
ⓐ prize ⓑ show ⓒ ride ⓓ kite

2- When did Ali .... the tent?
ⓐ cleans ⓑ cleaned ⓒ cleaning ⓓ clean

3- Noha is eating barbecued ....
ⓐ salad ⓑ chicken ⓒ burger ⓓ fish

4- .... you going to send an e-mail?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Is ⓒ Are ⓓ Did

Test 16

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Yesterday, Omar went to the amusement park. He went by bus. He drank pineapple juice. He saw a show. He ate cotton candy. He played with his friends. He didn't take pictures.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Omar ate cotton candy.		
2 Omar didn't see a show.		
3 Omar went by car.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- When did Omar go to the amusement park? ....

5- What kind of juice did Omar drink? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- went - a ride - My - on - brother. ....

2- are - going - kebabs - have - They - some - to. ....

3- tent - she - Did - the - clean? ....

4- do - did - she - What ? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- i go to school on foot

....

2- what s your first name?

....



Test 17 محافظة سوهاج

إدارة مغاغة التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

① Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
three	smile	middle
tree	slide	popcorn

② Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Hamdy : How are you?
Moaz : Fine, thank you.
Hamdy : Where are you ❶ .... ?
Moaz : I'm going to ❷ ....
Hamdy : How ❸ .... you go to school?
Moaz : I go to school by ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

③ Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	play	cooked	wanted	helped	....
2	car	taxi	Ali	bike	....
3	zoo	park	school	red	....
4	eggs	beans	see	rice	....
5	Friday	Monday	Tuesday	drum	....

④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... I need some juice.
ⓐ hungry ⓑ thirsty ⓒ okay ⓓ careful

2- Did you .... the tent?
ⓐ clean ⓑ cleaning ⓒ cleans ⓓ cleaned

3- She's .... to ride the bus.
ⓐ meeting ⓑ going ⓒ taking ⓓ eating

4- He .... juice.
ⓐ ate ⓑ won ⓒ drank ⓓ rode





Test (17)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Sara and Israa were pupils. Grandmother was old. Sara and Israa swept the floor, took out the rubbish, made the bed, hung up the clothes and did the laundry for grandmother. Grandmother wanted to set the table for lunch, but Sara and Israa did that for her. Grandmother was happy.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Sara and Israa were pupils.		
2 Grandmother set the table.		
3 Grandmother was happy.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Sara and Israa take out? ....

5- How was grandmother? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- is - the bed - She - making. ....

2- you - have - going to - What - are? ....

3- some - Let's - juice - get. ....

4- did - What - they - do? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- did they play cards ....

2- Hamdy and moaz visit their grandmother ....

Test 18 محافظة أسيوط

إدارة البدارى التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
floor flower	bed bad	shop chop

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Samy : What did you ❶ ……………………………………………………?

Ahmed : I did my English ❷ …………………………………………….

Samy : Do you ❸ …………………………………………… English?

Ahmed : Yes. It is my favourite subject.

Samy : ❹…………………………………………… you very much.

Ahmed : You are welcome.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 going	see	taking	buying	…………
2 lunch	fall	snack	breakfast	…………
3 my	afternoon	evening	night	…………
4 listened	laugh	bought	cooked	…………
5 thirsty	hungry	tired	have	…………

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Sarah went on a ……………… .
ⓐ flower ⓑ kite ⓒ ride ⓓ plane

2- I am very ……………… I need a sandwich.
ⓐ okay ⓑ thirsty ⓒ careful ⓓ hungry

3- We ……………… going to have lunch.
ⓐ have ⓑ are ⓒ be ⓓ do

4- They didn't ……………… pictures.
ⓐ take ⓑ took ⓒ taking ⓓ to take

Test 18

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Mohamed was at school yesterday. He found some money on the floor. He gave it to his teacher. The teacher thanked him and asked the students about the money. It was Ali's money. Ali thanked him, too. Then he invited him to have some cookies and orange juice. Mohamed was thirsty and he wanted to drink the juice. But Ali sneezed and dropped the juice.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Mohamed drank the juice.		
2	Two people thanked Mohamed.		
3	The teacher invited Mohamed to have cookies.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Mohamed find? ....

5- Where was Mohamed yesterday? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- you - right - Did - turn - say? ....

2- will - a haircut - He - have. ....

3- Ahmed's - What's - animal - favourite? ....

4- bus - the - We - riding - are. ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- i swept the floor ....

2- where are your books ....



Test 19

محافظة قنا

إدارة أبو تشت التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
walk jaw	bigger blister	painted counted

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Ali : ❶ .... is wrong?
Mona : I can't ❷ .... my sunscreen.
Ali : What ❸ .... is it?
Mona : It's black.
Ali : It's next to your camera.
Mona : Oh! ❹ .... it is.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	Friday	Wednesday	July	Monday	....
2	where	were	how	when	....
3	greeted	bread	waited	invited	....
4	wash	cook	orange	study	....
5	camp	home	zoo	pot	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- She's .... to ride the bus.
ⓐ meeting ⓑ going ⓒ taking ⓓ eating

2- What's your .... subject?
ⓐ middle ⓑ little ⓒ roasted ⓓ favourite

3- He went on a ....
ⓐ kite ⓑ flower ⓒ ride ⓓ prize

4- .... she buy a ticket yesterday?
ⓐ Was ⓑ Is ⓒ Did ⓓ Does

Test 19

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Ali and his family like parks. There's a nice park in their town. In this park, there are flowers and trees. There's green grass. There's a place for every family to have lunch under the trees. The children fly kites and play on the slide. They watch the fish in the creek.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 The children can't fly their kites in parks.		
2 Every family has lunch under the trees.		
3 Parks are nice.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- Are there any parks in Ali's town? ....

5- What do they watch in the creek? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- Reem's - What's - animal - favourite? ....

2- She's - visit - going - to - a friend. ....

3- Hany - Does - the board - draw - on? ....

4- cooked - She - breakfast. ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- i swept the floor ....

2- did Ali camp in Alexandria ....



محافظة الأقصر

إدارة أرمنت التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
three / tree	flower / mother	slide / smile

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Hoda : Wake up, Mona.

Mona : What ❶ .... is it, Hoda?

Hoda : It's seven ❷ .... It is time for breakfast.

Mona : What's for ❸ .... ?

Hoda : We are having beans and ❹ ....

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 pots	dogs	forks	pans	....
2 blue	red	juice	green	....
3 greeted	bread	waited	invited	....
4 camp	house	pot	library	....
5 father	uncle	sister	brother	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm .... I need juice.

a hungry b thirsty c okay d play

2- She's .... to ride the bus.

a meeting b going c taking d eating

3- My sister is going to hang .... the clothes.

a in b on c at d up

4- He .... tickets yesterday.

a buying b buys c bought d buy

Test 20

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Rehab and her sister Sara had breakfast early in the morning. After breakfast, they had orange juice. Then Rehab swept the floor. When their friend Laila came, they went out. Laila wanted to have a haircut. In the evening. Rehab and Sara went back home and Laila gave them two stories to read. The stories were nice.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Rehab and Sara had juice in the evening.		
2 Sara swept the floor.		
3 Laila went out with Sara and Rehab.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did Laila give Rehab and Sara? ....

5- Why did they go out? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- Mona - stories - listens - to. ....

2- are - What - going - you - to have? ....

3- the - riding - They - are - bus. ....

4- you - Are - okay? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

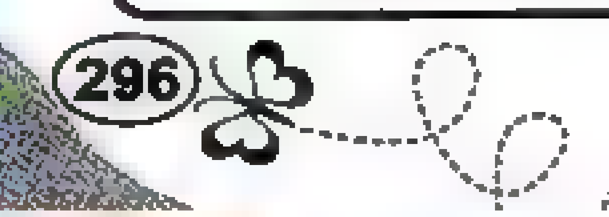
....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- I met heba and mona yesterday. ....

2- What's mona s favourite animal? ....





Test 21 محافظة مطروح

إدارة مطروح التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
dusted / walked	saddle / battle	blister / lobster

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Heba : Did you help your mother at home yesterday?
Dina : Yes, I did.
Heba : ❶ .... did you do?
Dina : I made my bed and ❷ .... the floor.
Heba : And did you ❸ .... the laundry?
Dina : No, I ❹ .... My mother did it.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 juice	lemonade	water	salad	....
2 eggs	beans	girl	kebab	....
3 greeted	bread	played	weeded	....
4 sing	spring	summer	winter	....
5 delicious	thirsty	strong	art	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- .... 's your favourite subject?
ⓐ Where ⓑ How ⓒ What ⓓ Why

2- She is going to .... a sandcastle.
ⓐ build ⓑ win ⓒ pick ⓓ do

3- It's so .... I need some juice.
ⓐ big ⓑ hot ⓒ cold ⓓ many

4- What .... you eating? - Fried rice.
ⓐ will ⓑ have ⓒ do ⓓ are

Test 21

⑤ **Read the passage and answer the questions:** (5 marks)

Mona and Kareem like the summer. They want to go to the beach. They want to build a sandcastle. Rasha wants to play in the leaves. Samy likes the spring. Shahd likes the winter.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
① Rasha wants to play in the leaves.		
② Mona and Kareem want to go to the beach.		
③ Shahd likes the fall.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What do Mona and Kareem like? ....

5-Who likes the spring? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

⑥ **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** (6 marks)

1- They - stories - listened - to. ....

2- you - Did - say - right - turn? ....

3- is - to have - Heba - going - kebab. ....

4- did - your - do - mum - What? ....

⑦ **Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:** (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

⑧ **Punctuate the following:** (2 marks)

1- did gihan go to the beach?

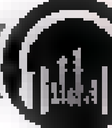
....

2- I like english.

....

Test 22 محافظة شمال سيناء

إدارة بئر العبد التعليمية



A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثانى فى آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
wall call	beetle battle	father sister

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

Hoda : It's so hot. I'm really thirsty.

Sara : Me, too. Let's get ❶ .... juice.

Hoda : What ❷ .... of juice do you want?

Sara : Orange juice.

Hoda : Do ❸ .... have enough money?

Sara : Uh-oh! I don't have enough money.

Hoda : That's ❹ .... It's my treat.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 taxi	car	see	bus	....
2 park	mother	father	brother	....
3 drink	tree	eat	go	....
4 turtle	tiger	two	monkey	....
5 rice	pen	burger	fish	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: (4 marks)

clothes - rubbish - made - cooked - swept

Mona helped her mother yesterday. She ❶............... the bed. She ❷............... the floor. She took out the ❸............... . She hung up the ❹............... . She does the laundry. Mona likes her mother very much.



Test 22

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Mona and her family were camping last week. They got up at seven o'clock and had breakfast. Ali and Hoda cleaned the tent. Grandmother watched the sunrise. In the afternoon, Sarah washed the pots and the pans. They laughed at jokes in the evening.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Grandfather watched the sunrise.		
2	They were camping last week.		
3	Mona cleaned the tent.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What did they do in the evening? ....

5- What time did they get up? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- are - What - they - doing? ....

2- museum - looking - I'm - the - for. ....

3- pick - Did - apples - you? ....

4- going - are - play - to - They. ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

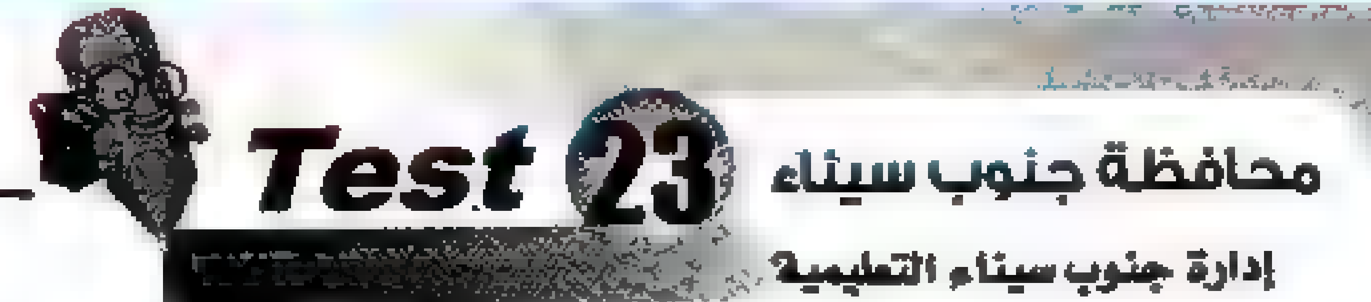
....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- ali won't go skiing. ....

2- does he see a film ....



Test 23 محافظة جنوب سيناء

إدارة جنوب سيناء التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (6 marks)

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالسؤالين الأول والثاني في آخر الكتاب

1	2	3
smile slide	battle puddle	middle riddle

2 Listen and complete: (6 marks)

A : Excuse me. I'm looking for the museum. Is ❶ .... far?

B : Not really. Walk two ❷ .... Turn right. It's on the left.

A : Did you ❸ .... turn right or turn left?

B : ❹ .... right. It's on the left.

B. Reading (14 Marks)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 eight	ten	boy	seven	....
2 went	drank	buy	won	....
3 heavy	happy	strong	problem	....
4 Friday	mother	Saturday	Sunday	....
5 green	yellow	drum	red	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- She .... to stories.

ⓐ climbed ⓑ washed ⓒ listened ⓓ laughed

2- Let's .... some juice.

ⓐ get ⓑ eat ⓒ slide ⓓ cry

3- What did she .... ?

ⓐ doing ⓑ do ⓒ does ⓓ to do

4- I .... going to ride the bus.

ⓐ are ⓑ were ⓒ is ⓓ am



Test 23

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (5 marks)

Everyone in my family is going to do something. I'm going to download a video. My father is going to send an email. My mother is going to visit a friend. Hassan is going to buy an ice cream. Mustafa is going to get a haircut. In the evening, my family is going to see a film. We aren't going to listen to music.

A- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 We're going to listen to music in the evening.		
2 My father is going to visit a friend.		
3 I'm going to download a video.		

B- Answer the following questions:

4- What's Mustafa going to do? ....

5- When is your family going to see a film? ....

C. Writing (14 Marks)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6 marks)

1- going - She's - to - pets - feed - the. ....

2- eating - are - What - you? ....

3- me - Let - help, - Mum - you. ....

4- video - a - he - download - Did? ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2 marks)

1- We don t go to school on friday. ....

2- what's Mona doing ....



Test 24

الأزهر الشريف

الإدارة المركزية لمعاهد كفر الشيخ

1 Read and circle the different sound in each group:

1	2	3	4
asked	walk	tree	father
dusted	flower	puddle	brother
needed	chalk	uncle	three

2 Read and rearrange the dialogue:

1- It's okay. It's my treat. (..........)
2- What kind of juice do you want? (..........)
3- Orange juice. Uh- oh! I don't have enough money. (..........)

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	class	teacher	lobster	board	....
2	greeted	bread	waited	invited	....
3	Friday	Monday	May	Tuesday	....

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Rehab and her sister Sara had breakfast very early in the morning. After breakfast, they had orange juice. Then Rehab swept the floor. When their friend Laila came, they went out. Laila wanted to get a haircut. In the evening, Rehab and Sara went back home and Laila gave them two stories to read. The stories were nice.

- Answer the following questions:

1- Who swept the floor?..........
2- What did Laila want to do?..........
3- What did Laila give Rehab and Sara?..........

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- for - looking - I'm - museum - the.

....

2- you - Did - say - right - turn?

....

3- breakfast - She - cooked - our.

....

Test 25

6 **Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:**

Use the following guiding words:

the zoo - a taxi - ticket - animals

....

....

....

....

ZOO

7 **Punctuate the following:**

what s mona going to have ....

Test 25

الأزهر الشريف

الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة القليوبية

1 **Read and circle the different sound in each group:**

1	2	3
laundry	dusted	e-mail
tiger	walked	beetle
dinner	needed	candle

2 **Read and rearrange the dialogue:**

☐ Yes, please. Thank you very much.
☐ What did you buy?
☐ You're welcome.
☐ I bought some apples. Do you want one?

3 **Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:**

				Answer
1 kebab	green	egg	salad	....
2 father	mother	brother	bottle	....
3 played	won	see	took	....
4 summer	money	winter	spring	....

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Tomorrow is Friday. Noha is going to the zoo with her family. They're going to ride the bus. Noha is going to see animals. They are going to buy ice cream. They're going to go home at seven in the evening.

- Answer the following questions:

a) How are they going to go to the zoo? ....

b) When are they going to go home? ....

c) What is Noha going to do? ....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- have - money - enough - I - don't.

....

2- stories - Ahmed - listened - to - yesterday.

....

3- salad - Is - she - green - to - going - have?

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:

You can use the following guiding words:

hot - thirsty - juice - treat

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following:

mona and heba want fish too ....